

teach  
yourself

# beginner's latin

goal  
fun introduction

category  
language

content

- cover all the basics
- go at a steady pace
- discover ancient rome and medieval europe

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



teach<sup>®</sup>  
yourself



**beginner's latin**  
g. d. a. sharpley

For over 60 years, more than  
40 million people have learnt over  
750 subjects the **teach yourself**  
way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be  
with **teach yourself**

-For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00-18.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 40 million copies sold worldwide – the teach yourself series includes over 300 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data:* a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

*Library of Congress Catalog Card Number:* on file.

First published in UK 1997 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1997 by Contemporary Books, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, 1 Prudential Plaza, 130 East Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60601 USA.

This edition published 2003.

The teach yourself name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 1997, 2003 G. D. A. Sharpley

*In UK:* All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP.

*In US:* All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Contemporary Books.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number	10 9 8 7
Year	2009 2008 2007 2006

# contents

<b>introduction</b>	pronunciation guide • essential grammar • index of grammar support • symbols and abbreviations	<b>v</b>
<b>01</b>	<b><i>in silva in the wood</i></b> • subjects and objects • the cases: nominative, accusative and ablative • <i>est</i> and <i>sunt</i> <i>the classics</i>	<b>1</b>
<b>02</b>	<b><i>umbræ in silva shadows in the wood</i></b> • singular and plural forms <i>a question of rhetoric</i>	<b>11</b>
<b>03</b>	<b><i>mulus gemit the mule groans</i></b> • masculine, feminine and neuter nouns • prepositions <i>speaking as the Romans did ...</i>	<b>19</b>
<b>04</b>	<b><i>figura feminae the figure of a woman</i></b> • genitive case • questions <i>'anyone' for a cancan?</i>	<b>31</b>
<b>05</b>	<b><i>Egbertae filia Egberta's daughter</i></b> • declensions: nominative and genitive • vocative case • adjectives <i>reformation and renaissance – life after death</i>	<b>41</b>
<b>06</b>	<b><i>in amphitheatro saevitia cruelty in the amphitheatre</i></b> • more adjectives • <i>potest, vult, debet</i> • infinitives • dative case <i>Latin wanted – dead or alive?</i>	<b>52</b>
<b>revision I (units 01–06)</b>		<b>63</b>
<b>07</b>	<b><i>puer cum diabolo ambulat the boy walks with the devil</i></b> • third declension nouns <i>di immortales</i>	<b>67</b>
<b>08</b>	<b><i>nos fortunatos! how lucky we are!</i></b> • verbs: first and second conjugations: present and future <i>brotherly love</i>	<b>77</b>

09	<b>quis in silva ululat? who is howling in the wood?</b> • third declension adjectives • gerundives <i>speculator amicae</i>	89
10	<b>lacrimae in monasterio tears in the monastery</b> • third, fourth and mixed conjugations: present and future • how to recognize a conjugation • <i>esse, posse, velle</i> <i>miserabile corpus</i>	99
11	<b>libera nos a malo deliver us from evil</b> • imperfect tense • adjectives: -ens • present participles • adjectives as nouns <i>Yaysoos in chaylo</i>	109
12	<b>in manus tuas commendo spiritum meum into your hands I commend my spirit</b> • perfect tense • personal pronouns • <i>my, your, our</i> <i>the murder in a cathedral</i>	118
revision II (units 07–12)		129
13	<b>Paulus sub aqua Paulus under water</b> • past participles • <i>eo, ire</i> <i>a winter's night</i>	133
14	<b>venatrix in silva a huntress in the wood</b> • fourth and fifth declensions • pluperfect tense • compound verbs <i>a hunting moral</i>	144
15	<b>audire est intellegere to hear is to understand</b> • <i>ille, hic, is, ipse, se</i> • passive forms <i>all's fair in philosophy, love and war</i>	153
16	<b>quis in monasterio conspirat? who is plotting in the monastery?</b> • subjunctive • imperative • <i>ut</i> and <i>ne</i> • <i>cum</i> <i>friends, Romans ... and family</i>	163
17	<b>peior quam diabolus worse than the devil</b> • more passive forms • deponent verbs • comparative and superlative of adjectives <i>the consolation of philosophy</i>	174
18	<b>versus Catulli combusti sunt! the verses of Catullus have been incinerated!</b> • 'if' clauses • direct and reported speech <i>love in the rain</i>	185
reference tables		194
key to the exercises		206
Latin–English vocabulary		219
English–Latin vocabulary		229

## Flogging a dead course?

It may seem odd to find Latin alive and well at the beginning of the twenty-first century, and yet here it is, one of nature's survivors. And why? Because beyond this course there is a literature teeming with good things, with high life, with low life and, most of all, with life. All we have to do, of course, is read it ...

## Paulus and Lucia

The story is a foil for the grammar and exercises. It is set at a monastery in northern Europe around the ninth century AD. An English translation of the Latin story is available at the LATIN QUARTER ([www.lingua.co.uk](http://www.lingua.co.uk)).

## Living Latin

Assembling all the information about words and endings is a necessary but sometimes slow process. This section offers the chance to hear some excerpts of authentic Latin. You do not have to study these in detail to make progress. They are included to give you an idea of what there is to enjoy once you have mastered the language.

## Recording

A recording of the story and 'Living Latin' sections of the book is available. This is not an essential aid to learning the language, but will enhance your enjoyment of the poetry, and give you an idea of what Latin sounded like.

# Pronunciation guide to classical Latin

As in English (standard southern British), except:

- a 'cup' (short vowel) or 'father' (long vowel)
- ae 'eye'
- au 'house'
- c 'cat' (always hard; *never* as in 'chalice')
- ch 'k' with a sharper expulsion of breath (as in 'curses!')
- e 'pet' (short vowel) or 'pay' (long vowel)
- ei 'reign'
- eu two sounds run together: 'e-oo'
- g 'gag' (almost always hard, not as in 'George')
- gn at the beginning of a word 'n', and in the middle of a word 'ngn'
- i 'lip' (short vowel) or 'leap' (long vowel)
- i (j) consonant: as English 'y'
- ng as in 'anger' (not 'hangar')
- o 'not' (short vowel) or (long vowel) 'note' (as the Scots would say it)
- oe 'oil'
- ph 'p' with a sharper expulsion of breath (as in 'peasant!')
- qu 'kw', as in 'quack' (as English 'qu', not French)
- r trilled with the tip of the tongue (again, think Scots...)
- s as in *hiss* (not *his*)
- th as 't' with a sharper expulsion of breath
- u 'pull' (short vowel) or (long vowel) 'pool' (not with the 'y' sound in 'pew')
- v as English 'w'
- y French 'tu' (short vowel), French 'sur' (long vowel)

## Yoolius Kysser, Joolius Seezer, Yoolius Chaser

The story of Lucia and Paulus, though set in a later period, is narrated according to the guidelines above. The selections in 'Living Latin' are also read in the classical manner, except post-classical ones (marked \*). You will hear one or two different sounds in the post-classical sections, such as our own 'v' sound in the v; the erosion of ae to e; and the Church/Italian 'ch' sound in ci/ce (e.g. *caelum*: classical – *kylum*, ecclesiastical – *chaylum*).

---

1 Subsequent to publication of the first edition and the accompanying recording, I am no longer comfortable with the traditional view of a hard 'g' in all environments. It seems increasingly likely that in certain words (e.g. *ego*, *magister*, *fragilis*) the 'g' is softer – closer to a 'y' than 'j'. GDAS 2003

These changes should be taken as characteristic only, and not as precise, scientific reconstructions according to date, region and speaker. It's hard enough reaching any certainty about Cicero's Latin, never mind the multitude of evolving and fragmenting forms which followed.

Verse-rhythms of later Latin changed too. The rhythms of classical poetry were founded on an interplay of natural stress and quantity (i.e. the metre), but later poets came to disregard metre and used stresses alone to maintain rhythm.

Our efforts of recreation are inevitably hit and miss, no doubt betraying more than a few signs of the present day. For a further discussion of pronunciation see 'Speaking as the Romans did' (p. 25), and those who wish to explore this topic in more detail should look at *Vox Latina* (W. Sidney Allen, CUP, 1965).

## Essential grammar

### Nouns

A noun is a word like *mule*, *monk* or *wood*. Something you can see or at least feel. English nouns often have *the* or *a* in front of them. Latin has no equivalent words for *the* and *a* so when you translate a noun you must decide whether or not to add them. Names are also nouns, like *Paul*, *Rome*, etc., and so are abstract ideas like *peace*, *kindness*, *fear*, which are real enough but cannot be identified in the same way as concrete objects.

### Verbs

A verb is a 'doing' or 'being' word; it describes the action, what happens or what is done, e.g.

*The mule watches the wood.*

*The monk is not carrying the bag.*

*Paul is a student.*

English verbs often comprise more than one word (e.g. *is carrying*). Most Latin verbs are expressed by one word only. A verb like *spectat* has three possible versions in English: *watches*, *is watching* or *does (not) watch*. As with 'the' and 'a' and nouns above, a judgement has to be made from the context, from what 'sounds right'.




# Index of grammar support

Grammatical words and guidance appear on these pages.

ablative 4, 21, 23, 145, 158, 179	nominative 4, 42
ablative absolute 138	nouns vii, 194–5
accusative 4, 23, 55, 103, 188	neuter 20, 72
active 135, 157	object 2, 138, 157
adjective 43, 112, 178, 198	participle 112, 134
agent 158	passive 93, 135, 157
case 4	perfect 119, 135
comparative 178	pluperfect 146
compound 26, 62, 103, 149	plural 12
conditionals 186	possession 32, 56, 122
conjugation 78, 104	prefix 26, 62, 149
dative 55	preposition 23, 145
declension 42, 194–5	present vii, 78
deponent 175	principal parts 134
future 82, 103	pronoun 13, 121, 154–6, 196–7
gender 20	questions 35
genitive 32, 42	reflexive pronoun 155
gerundive 92	singular 12
imperative 165	subject 2, 138, 157
imperfect 110, 119	subjunctive 164, 169, 203
indicative 164, 199–202	superlative 179
infinitive 53	tense 78
inflection 2	verbs vii
interrogative 35	vocative 43
irregular verbs 103, 139, 204	voice 164
mood 164	

## Symbols and abbreviations

 This indicates material that has been recorded and is available on cassette or CD.

m. masculine; f. feminine; n. neuter; pl. plural; sing. singular;  
nom. nominative; voc. vocative; acc. accusative; gen. genitive;  
dat. dative; abl. ablative; \*post-classical

## Acknowledgements

The publishers and author thank The Finnish Broadcasting Company, Finland, for permission to include an excerpt from Nuntii Latini (Vol.3); the Latin Quarter ([www.lingua.co.uk](http://www.lingua.co.uk)) for permission to adapt the story of Lucia and Paulus for the Teach Yourself series.

Thanks also to my students for their valuable feedback while the course was being developed; to P.O'R. Smiley and Amanda Lee for many helpful comments and corrections; to Keely Mitchell for her excellent drawings; to my editors at Teach Yourself; and to my wife, Sarah, and our three daughters, Rebecca, Meg and Flora.

George Sharpley

# 01

## **in silva** in the wood

**In this unit you will learn about**

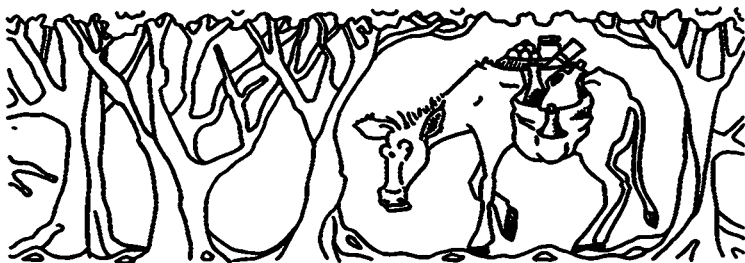
- **subjects and objects**
- **the cases**
- **and find out more about Latin in 'The classics'**

## Subjects and objects

Latin is an inflected language. This means that the final syllable(s) of a word can vary according to the way the word is being used in the sentence:

**Mulus** silvam spectat.

*The mule is watching the wood.*



Here the mule is doing the watching, the wood is being watched. The mule is the *subject* of the sentence, the wood the *object*, the difference being that the subject is the 'doer', the object is on the receiving end and is 'done to'. Latin makes this clear by having different endings for subject and object.

**Mulum** silva spectat.

*The wood is watching the mule.*



Now *silva* no longer has a final 'm', and *mulus* has been changed to *mulum*. This makes *silva* the subject and *mulum* the object. English word order is more restricted because we recognize a subject by its position in a sentence, not by its ending. Latin's word order is more flexible: in general the subject appears before the object, with the verb at the end to complete a sentence or word-group, although variations, for a particular emphasis or rhythm, often occur. The verb's place at the end may seem strange

at first, but you will get used to it. Reading is a process of anticipation and completion of meaning; in English this function is often performed by the object:

*Today the milkman delivered ... (bottles of milk is the anticipated object; the post would come as a surprise, and twins even more so).*

Latin has us predicting the action, not the object:

*Today the milkman ... two pints of milk ... (delivered is what we are expecting, ahead of stole or threw at the boy on the skateboard).*

## ► Paulus in silva *Paulus in the wood*

Paulus in silva ambulat. Mulus cum Paulo ambulat. Mulus non Paulum sed sarcinam portat. Fessus est Paulus et mulus est lentus. Mulus silvam non amat. Mulus silvam spectat. Silva mulum spectat. Mulus est territus.

amat	likes, loves
ambulat	walks, is walking
cum	with, in the company of
est	is
et	and
fessus	tired
in	in, on
lentus	slow
mulus, mulum, mulo	mule
non	not
Paulus, Paulum, Paulo	Paul
portat	carries, is carrying
sarcina, sarcinam	bag
sed	but
silva, silvam	wood
spectat	watches, is watching
territus	scared

## Practice (i)

- 1 There are a few English words which change their form according to whether they are subject or object. These are pronouns, words we use in place of nouns. Complete the table with the missing subject or object forms:

(a)

Subject	Object
<i>I</i>	
<i>she</i>	
	<i>him</i>
<i>we</i>	

(b)

Subject	Object
<i>silva</i>	
	<i>mulum</i>
	<i>sarcinam</i>
<i>Paulus</i>	

2 Choose the correct word and translate:



(a) *Mulus (sarcina/sarcinam) portat.*

(b) *Mulum (Paulus/Paulum) portat.*

3 Choose the correct verb and translate:

(a) *Mulus silvam non (ambulat/amat).*

(b) *Paulus in silva (portat/ambulat).*

(c) *Mulus silvam (portat/spectat).*

(d) *Non Paulus sed mulus sarcinam (portat/ambulat).*

## Cases

'Case' is the name given to the different kinds of word-ending:

Nominative case *Subject*

Accusative case *Object, or with prepositions (e.g. ad)*

Ablative case *'With', 'in' used (not always) with prepositions (e.g. cum, in)*

*silva, mulus*

*silvam, mulum*

*silva, mulo*

Nouns like *mulus* (e.g. *Paulus*, etc.) all have the same case endings, and nouns like *silva* (*sarcina*, etc.) have their endings in common too.

## Est and sunt

*Est is and sunt are* do not take objects like other verbs do. The 'object' of the verb *to be* is not on the receiving end of anything particular, but merely describes the subject. So any 'object' or rather complement of the verb 'to be' will be in the nominative case:

Paulus monachus est.

*Paul is a monk.*

but

Paulus monachum spectat.

*Paul watches the monk.*

## ► Mulus lente ambulat *The mule walks slowly*

Paulus est monachus. Benedictus etiam est monachus. Benedictus cibum desiderat. Paulus cibum emit et ad monasterium revenit. Nunc Paulus cum mulo in silva ambulat. Cibus est in sarcina. Mulus sarcinam portat. Mulus lente ambulat et silvam spectat.

ad	to, towards
cibum (acc. of cibus)	food
desiderat	longs for
emit	buys
etiam	also
lente	slowly
monachus	monk
monasterium	monastery
nunc	now
revenit	returns
in	on or in

## Practice (ii)

1 Fill the gaps:

Subject Nominative case	Object Accusative case	'in', 'with', 'on' Ablative case
mulus		mulo
	Paulum	
	sarcinam	
silva		silva

2 Identify the cases of the underlined nouns, and translate:

- (a) Benedictus cibum desiderat.
- (b) Mulus sarcinam non amat.
- (c) Benedictus non in silva est.
- (d) Paulus est monachus.

3 Complete the words which have missing endings, and translate:



- (a) Paul\_\_\_ cum mul\_\_\_  
in silv\_\_\_ ambulat.

- (b) In mul\_\_\_ est sarcin\_\_\_.



## About Latin

### The classics

Latin was the language spoken in Rome and the surrounding region, Latium (mod. Lazio) as early as the sixth century BC and possibly earlier. The number of Latin speakers grew with the expansion of Rome's empire around the Mediterranean, and the vocabulary swelled and forms modified under the influence of languages in the new subject territories (especially Greek).

The classical Latin authors lived within a few decades either side of the life of Christ. In the first century BC Cicero tried to prevent the republican government falling prey to the ambitions of dictators. A compelling public speaker, his skills brought him to the attention of politicians such as Caesar and Pompey, and he was courted by them as an owner of a newspaper or television station might be today. His writing was greatly admired, and the elegance and rhetorical flair of his prose became a model for later scholars and schoolboys to imitate. He was followed by, amongst others, the historian Tacitus, whose pointed asides on the theme of moral and aristocratic



shaded area indicates where Latin was spoken at the end of the first century AD

degeneration enliven his account of Rome under the early emperors. Of the poets the best known is perhaps Virgil. His story of the founding of Rome by the Trojan fugitive Aeneas emerged within a few years of publication as a political symbol and literary masterpiece. Horace, a friend of Virgil, is remembered for his Odes, four books of lyric poetry drawing on themes of love and friendship, and yearnings, never quite fulfilled, for homely contentment and rustic ease. The erotic elegies of Propertius and Tibullus echo Catullus' earlier infatuation for Lesbia and foreshadow the work of Ovid, a decade or so later. Ovid's wit and fresh invention brought new twists to the elegiac genre, and his verse was imitated more than any other by medieval writers; partly, perhaps, because copies were available, but also because of a lightness of touch which won him universal appeal.

These classics have a timeless feel about them. They have been drummed into pupils for the best part of two thousand years (less the last few decades, perhaps). They are literature's heroes and anti-heroes. If other heroes are found, more often than not they are those heroes' heroes. Classical authors have been trotted out as arbiters of good taste throughout the centuries, medieval and Renaissance, neoclassical and new wave.



This aura of permanence is reinforced by the serene grandeur of classical civilization, by the durability of buildings and statues which survive it. Much of what actually went on, however, was anything but serene and civilized. Writers and artists are known to find inspiration under duress and in times of political insecurity. So it was with some of the best Roman literature. Throughout most of the first century BC Italy suffered from political chaos and intermittent cruelty and bloodshed. 'O Tempora O Mores!' (*What an age! What moral standards!*) cried Cicero, rounding on his peers for failing to live up to earlier times, and damning the period we have subsequently identified as one of the greatest in our history.

The classical period of Latin was a moment in the language's evolution which could not endure, for no living language can remain the same for long. The efforts of later grammarians to preserve classical Latin were a symptom of its passing. As the living, spoken language moved on, eventually evolving into French, Spanish, Italian and other Romance languages, this classical, literary Latin was preserved and 'pickled' by later generations of writers and scholars, and after the fall of the western empire, by monks in their monasteries.

Thus the rules of classical Latin, the grammar and syntax, are something of a still shot of what was essentially transitory. Nonetheless these rules are instrumental in shaping all the Latin which followed, for almost all subsequent Latinists have attempted, with different degrees of success, to remain faithful to classical norms. Where possible the Latin in this course, the grammar, syntax, idioms and pronunciation, are based on the ground rules of classical Latin, including our story set in a medieval monastery. There are some inevitable twentieth-century inventions, and a number of words are used in their medieval sense, such as *ecclesia* (*church*) and *presbyter* (*priest*).

# Revision

## 1 Fill the gaps:

Case	<i>silva</i> <i>wood</i>	<i>monachus</i> <i>monk</i>	<i>sarcina</i> <i>bag</i>	<i>cibus</i> <i>food</i>
Nominative (subject)	<i>silva</i>	<i>monachus</i>	<i>sarcina</i>	<i>cibus</i>
Accusative (object)			<i>sarcinam</i>	<i>cibum</i>
Ablative (in, on, with)	<i>silva</i>	<i>monacho</i>		

## 2 Translate into Latin:

- Benedict is not walking in the wood.
- The bag is on the mule.
- The mule does not carry Paul but the bag.
- The mule does not like the wood.

## 3 Write a Latin sentence with:

- mulus* in the accusative;
- sarcina* in the ablative;
- Paulus* in the nominative;
- monachus* in the ablative.

## 4 Do you know what these words mean? If not, look back and learn them ...

<i>silva</i>	<i>mulus</i>	<i>sarcina</i>
<i>et</i>	<i>non</i>	<i>amat</i>
<i>ambulat</i>	<i>spectat</i>	<i>portat</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>cibus</i>	<i>sed</i>
<i>cum</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>nunc</i>
<i>etiam</i>	<i>monachus</i>	

What English words have their roots (or some of them) in these Latin words?

## ► Living Latin

This section of each unit contains some authentic Latin, most but not all of which is classical. The pieces are included as both a rest and a stimulant. You are not expected to read them too closely, in fact you are advised not to! Many of the words and endings will be unfamiliar, so be positive and accumulate what you can. With the help of the translations see what you are able to work out, then sit back and listen to the recordings, and repeat them for pronunciation practice.

**1 Verberat nos et lacerat fortuna.**

(Seneca, Dial. i, 4, 12)

*Fortune batters and torments us.*

**2 Defendi rem publicam adulescens, non deseram senex.**

(Cicero, Phil. ii, 118)

*I defended the republic as a young man, I shall not desert it in my old age.*

**3 Ubi solitudinem faciunt, pacem appellant.**

(Tacitus, Agricola xxx)

*They make a desert and call it peace.*

**4 Aurora interea miseris mortalibus almam  
extulerat lucem referens opera atque labores.**

(Virgil, Aeneid xi, 182-3)

*Dawn now raised her nourishing light upon the suffering mortals and renewed their daily grind.*

**5 O tempora, o mores! Senatus haec intellegit, consul videt.**

(Cicero, In Catilinam i, 1)

*What an age! What moral standards! The senate knows what's going on, the consul has it right in front of his eyes.*

# 02

## **umbræ in silva** shadows in the wood

**In this unit you will learn about**

- singular and plural
- and find out more about Latin in 'A question of rhetoric'

## Singular and plural forms

The plural of *mulus* *mule* is *muli* if nominative (subject), *mulos* if accusative (object) or *mulis* if ablative (*in, with, etc.*). The verb (*spectat, laborat, etc.*) has an 'n' before the final 't' if the subject is plural:

*Mulus* in agro laborat.

*The mule is working in the field.*

*Muli* in agro laborant.

*The mules are working in the field.*

*Monachi* *mulos* spectant.

*The monks watch the mules.*

In agro est *mulus*.

*A mule is (there is a mule) in the field.*

In agro sunt *mulj*.

*Mules are (there are mules) in the field.*

## ► *Mulus equos non amat* *The mule doesn't like horses*

*Benedictus et Stephanus monachi sunt. Monachi in monasterio habitant. Paulus discipulus in schola est. Discipuli cum monachis in monasterio habitant. Mulus cum equis in agro habitat. Mulus saepe in agris laborat. Equi cum mulo non laborant. Equos mulus non amat.*

<i>agro</i>	<i>(in) a field</i>
<i>discipulus</i>	<i>student</i>
<i>equos (equus)</i>	<i>horses</i>
<i>habitat, habitant</i>	<i>lives, live</i>
<i>laborat, laborant</i>	<i>works, work</i>
<i>saepe</i>	<i>often</i>
<i>schola</i>	<i>school</i>
<i>sunt</i>	<i>are</i>



## Practice (i)

1 Choose the correct words and translate:

Mulus cum (equos/equis) in agro habitat, sed (equi/equus) cum (mulum/mulo) non laborant.

2 Choose the correct word and translate:

- (a) Mulus sarcinam (portat/portant).
- (b) Monachi in monasterio (habitat/habitant).
- (c) Muli non equos (amat/amant).
- (d) Equus in agro non (laborat/laborant).

## How to look for the subject

If there is no subject, i.e. no word in the nominative case, then we add an English pronoun (*he, she* or *it* if the verb is singular, *they* if plural):

In monasterio laborat.

*She works in the monastery.*

In agro habitat.

*They live in the field.*

## Silvae, umbrae

The plural of silva (and nouns like silva) is silvae (nominative), silvas (accusative) and silvis (ablative):

In silvis sunt umbrae.

*There are shadows in the woods.*

Sarcinae non portat.

*(She/it) does not carry the bags.*

## ► Umbrae in silvis Shadows in the woods

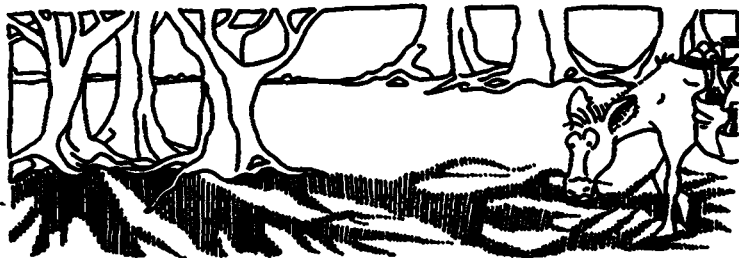
Benedictus vinum desiderat. Paulus igitur vinum in oppido emit et ad monasterium cum mulo ambulat. Mulus vinum portat. Nunc sunt in silva. Mulus saepe in silvis ambulat, sed non silvas amat quod in silvis sunt umbrae. Mulus neque umbras neque sarcinas amat. Mulus amicos in agro desiderat.

amicos (amicus)	friends
emit	(s/he) buys
igitur	and so
in oppido	in the town
neque...neque	neither...nor
quod	because
umbrae (umbra)	shadows
vinum	wine

## Practice (ii)

1 Choose the correct words and translate:

Mulus non (silvas/silvis) amat quod in (silvas/silvis) sunt (umbrae/umbras).



2 Choose the correct words and translate:

- (a) Sarcinae in mulo (est/sunt).
- (b) Umbras in silva mulus non (amat/amant).
- (c) Monachi sarcinas non (portat/portant).
- (d) Equi in silva non (habitat/habitant).

## About Latin

### A question of rhetoric

The classical period was a relatively brief period in the life of Latin. It was then immortalized by the enthusiasm of later generations, and two thousand years later the books are all we have left. But books are all it was ever meant to be. Classical Latin was composed on the page; it may have been brought to life by recital, but it was a written language. We may safely assume that the carefully weighted sentences of Cicero or the delicate rhythms of poets were not typical of everyday conversational Latin of the time.

Latin literature was the work of an educated, erudite minority. Authors all shared the same school texts, the same tutors, the same tastes, the same stock of stories and myths, the same models, Roman and Greek. Not many Romans were literate, and even fewer were literary. Authors were either themselves members of an upper-class elite or supported by someone who was. They frequently allude to myths, heroes and episodes in their history, as though to impress us with the detail of their knowledge. But their readership, the educated Roman public, were all familiar with the material. They did not judge an author by this alone, but by the use he made of it; and this material was almost all derived from Greece.

At the beginning of the second century BC, Rome controlled parts of the western Mediterranean, and her ambitious generals were contemplating further expansion eastwards, beginning with Greece. Several Romans had already visited Greece and liked what they had sampled of the refinements of Greek culture and lifestyle. Here they found an artistic inspiration and intellectual energy unmatched by anything back home, and before long Greek art and literature found a new and enthusiastic public in Italy. Talented and educated Greeks were befriended, hired, or bought in the slave markets to guide this process of cultural transfusion, a process which gathered momentum once Rome had made the step from ally to mistress of Greece.

Political control of the eastern half of the Mediterranean had belonged to the Macedonians. Greece was once part of Alexander the Great's empire, which stretched from Greece to India and south into Egypt. Alexander's travels and conquests merged the cultures of Greece with those of the near east and north Africa, creating the 'Hellenistic' culture. The city of Alexandria in Egypt became the library of the Hellenistic world, attracting writers and artists, poets and professors. This was the Greek culture which Romans inherited and experienced first-hand, but it was not the Greek culture they aspired to.

In the fifth century BC, when Rome was still struggling to assert her independence and when the Latin language was in its infancy, Greece experienced her classical age. Having fought off the menace of Persian aggression, Athens, Sparta and other city-states (Greece was not a single country at this time) all contributed to an era of virtually unparalleled excellence in the arts, in literature, architecture, philosophy and politics. The achievements of the Athenians were the most notable, and certainly now the most visible. Having organized a union of minor states, Athens turned this into an empire, and from its revenues built the Parthenon and other buildings on the Acropolis. Abroad she ruled with the heavy hand of a despot, but at home she nurtured the world's first democratic government. In this period the dramatists Aeschylus, Sophocles, Euripides and Aristophanes wrote and produced their plays; Herodotus and Thucydides wrote their histories; and Socrates and Plato confronted politicians with arguments about power and methods of persuasion in a democratic society.

Debate, discussion, argument, a willingness to talk through issues and participate in public affairs gave impetus to Athenian



democracy. But by the end of the fifth century democracy was already beginning to lose its innocence. Politicians were thought to be out for all they could get, promising the world for a taste of power. Socrates himself criticized professional teachers of rhetoric, who gave lessons in how to deliver convincing arguments (and win elections) at the expense of the substance of the argument itself. Was there a value, wondered Socrates, in persuading others of a particular course of action if we did not first have a very firm grasp of the merits of that course of action? His stubborn pursuit of the truth offended a number of powerful people, and he was put to death at the close of the fifth century.

The Athenian taste for dialogue and debate was not confined to politics and philosophy but infused their plays, histories and all their literature. No one argued more convincingly than Socrates, despite his misgivings about the power of persuasion, and his conversations were recreated by his student, Plato (we have nothing written by Socrates himself), whose dialogues were an inspiration to later students of rhetoric. Rhetoric was taught as a formal subject in Greek, Roman and medieval schools – our meaning of ‘rhetoric’ today shows what a lost skill speaking has become.

The Greeks were known for being good speakers, and good squabblers. The difference between a debate and a quarrel is only one of degree, and while one was a symptom of freedom, the other brought that freedom to an end. A quarrel between the two most powerful city-states, Athens and Sparta, weakened the peninsula enough for Alexander’s father, Philip, to overrun it in the fourth century.

The later period of Hellenism looked back on classical Greece as a golden age, and the literati deliberately recreated and imitated earlier writers. The Romans absorbed these conventions, and thus Greek ideas, rhythms, stories, their gods even, found new fertile soil in Italy, helping to shape and develop the Latin language.

# Revision

17

shadows in the wood

02

1 Add the missing forms to the tables:

(a)

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)	mulus		
Accusative (object)		discipulum	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)	mulo		umbra
		Plural	
Nominative (subject)		discipuli	umbrae
Accusative (object)	mulos		
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)		discipulis	umbris

(b)

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)	equis	silva	
Accusative (object)			sarcinam
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)			
		Plural	
Nominative subject)			
Accusative (object)		silvas	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)			

2 Change the underlined word to the plural (if the subject is plural, the verb will be plural too), and translate:

- Paulus saepe in agro cum monacho laborat.
- Sarcina in mulo est.
- Discipulus in monasterio habitat.
- Mulus umbram non amat.

## 3 Translate into Latin:

- (a) There are shadows in the woods.
- (b) The monks are not carrying bags.
- (c) The mule often walks in the woods.
- (d) The mule does not like the horses because they do not work with mules.

## 4 Do you know what these words mean? If not, look back and learn them....

umbra	sunt	vinum
discipulus	equus	saepe
desiderat	quod	ad
igitur	laborat	amicus

Now look for English derivatives (they are often a clue to the meaning of the Latin word but not always identical to it).

## ► Living Latin

1 **Contra quis ferat arma deos?**

(Tibullus, Elegies i, 6, 30)

*Who may take arms against the gods?*

2 **\*Nonne Socrates iniustae victoriam mortis promeruit?**

(Boethius, Consolation of Philosophy i, 3)

*Did not Socrates reap the victory of an unjust death?*

3 **Graecia capta ferum victorem cepit et artis intulit agresti Latio.**

(Horace, Epistles ii, 1, 156–7)

*When Greece was captured, she in turn captivated her untamed conqueror and introduced the arts to bumpkin Lazio.*

4 **Vivos ducent de marmore vultus.**

(Virgil, Aeneid vi, 848)

*(The Greeks) will bring to life faces from marble.*

5 **\*Si quidem deus est, unde mala? Bona vero unde, si non est?**

(Boethius, Consolation of Philosophy i, 4)

*If there is a god, how can there be evil? And how can there be good if there is not?*

\*post-classical

# 03

## **mulus gemit** the mule groans

**In this unit you will learn about**

- **masculine, feminine and neuter nouns**
- **prepositions**
- **and find out more about Latin in 'Speaking as the Romans did ...'**

## Nouns ending -er

Presbyter *priest*, puer *boy*, liber *book*, magister *master* and ager *field* all have endings identical to *mulus* except for the nominative singular (-er). Some lose the 'e' in the other cases:

		Singular			
Nom.	presbyter	puer	liber	magister	ager
Acc.	presbyterum	puerum	librum	magistrum	agrum
Abl.	presbytero	puero	libro	magistro	agro
		Plural			
Nom.	presbyteri	pueri	libri	magistri	agri
Acc.	presbyteros	pueros	libros	magistros	agros
Abl.	presbyteris	pueris	libris	magistris	agris

## Masculine, feminine and neuter

Most nouns like *silva* are feminine and those like *mulus* (and *presbyter*, *puer*, etc.) are masculine. There are also neuter nouns. You will need to know a noun's gender when you come to matching adjectives with the nouns they qualify.

### Neuter nouns ending -um

*Vinum* *wine*, *monasterium* *monastery*, *oppidum* *town*, *oleum* *oil*, *ovum* *egg* and *unguentum* *perfume* also have endings similar to *mulus*: the differences are in the nominative singular, which ends -um (like the accusative), and the nominative/accusative plural, both of which end -a:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	vin-um	vin-a
Accusative	vin-um	vin-a
Ablative	vin-o	vin-is

These are neuter nouns, and all without exception have the same endings for both the nominative and accusative cases, so the ending alone will not tell you whether a neuter noun is subject or object. This has to be worked out from the context:

*Mulus vinum non amat*  
(object).

*The mule does not like wine.*

*In sarcina est vinum*  
(subject).

*In the bag is some wine.*

**Ablative case: 'in, on, with, by, from'**

English words which commonly render the ablative are: 'in, on, with, by, from'. Sometimes the ablative is used without a preposition:

*Sarcina est unguentis  
onerosa.*

*The bag is heavy with  
perfumes.*

*Cum, with*, is only used if it means 'in the company of'.

▣ **Sarcinae onerosae** *The bags are heavy*

**Shared endings key**

(Nouns are singular, unless stated plural. Entries in bold are included for the first time. A vowel may be long or short, e.g. nominative *silva*, ablative *silvā*.)

- um     mulum, puerum, agrum : accusative  
         vinum : **nominative or accusative**
- a     silva : nominative or ablative  
         vina : **nominative pl. or accusative pl.**

Paulus et Benedictus monachi sunt. Benedictus presbyter est, et cum ancillis in culina laborat. Paulus non presbyter sed discipulus est. In culina et in bibliotheca et in agris laborat. Benedictus, ubi cibum vinumque desiderat, Paulum ad oppidum mittit. Hodie igitur Paulus mulusque ex oppido per silvam ad monasterium reveniunt. Ager et monasterium longe absunt. Sarcinae sunt onerosae. Sarcinae vino et ovis et oleo et unguento onerosae sunt. Mulus gemit. Unguenta et cibum et vinum semper Benedictus desiderat sed semper mulus portat.

<b>absunt</b>	<i>(they) are away, absent</i>
<b>ancillis (ancilla)</b>	<i>maids</i>
<b>bibliotheca</b>	<i>library</i>
<b>culina</b>	<i>kitchen</i>
<b>ex</b>	<i>from, out of</i>
<b>gemit</b>	<i>(s/he) groans</i>
<b>hodie</b>	<i>today</i>
<b>longe</b>	<i>far, distant</i>
<b>mittit</b>	<i>(s/he) sends</i>
<b>onerosae</b>	<i>heavy</i>
<b>per</b>	<i>through, across, along</i>

-que (cibum vinumque)	and (food and wine)
reveniunt	(they) come back
semper	always
ubi	when, where

## Practice (i)

1 Add the missing forms to the following tables:

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)	ager	unguentum	presbyter
Accusative (object)		unguentum	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)	agro		presbytero
		Plural	
Nominative (subject)		unguenta	
Accusative (object)	agros	unguenta	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)			presbyteris

2 Choose the correct words and translate:

- (a) (Presbyter/presbyteri)  
cum (discipulos/discipulis)  
non (laborat/laborant).



- (b) Sarcina (vinum/vino) et  
(oleo/olea) et (unguenta/  
unguentis) et (ovum/ovis)  
onerosa est.

3 Change the underlined words into the plural, and alter any other words which are affected, and translate:

- (a) Monachus in monasterio habitat.
- (b) Mulus non silvam sed agrum amat.
- (c) Equus neque in silvis neque in agris cum mulo laborat.
- (d) Benedictus vinum et unguentum desiderat.

## Prepositions – ablative or accusative?

These are words which form phrases with nouns. Sometimes the noun is in the accusative case, sometimes the ablative. It depends on the preposition:

+ Accusative	+ Ablative
<b>per</b> through, by way of	<b>cum</b> with
<b>in</b> into, on to	<b>in</b> in, on
<b>ad</b> to, towards	<b>a(b) *</b> from, by
	<b>e(x) *</b> out of, away from, off
	* the extra consonant is used before a vowel

Prepositions like 'in' which are used with either case are followed by the accusative if some motion is implied, or ablative if it is not:

In terram cadit.

In terra iacet.

In silvam ambulat.

In silva ambulat.

*She falls on to the ground.*

*She lies on the ground.*

*She walks into the wood.*

*She walks in the wood.*

## ► Monachus in cucullo A hooded monk

Paulus et mulus longe a monasterio absunt. Neque silvam neque sarcinas amat mulus. 'Io!' clamat Paulus. Mulus non ambulat.

Subito equum Paulus et mulus audiunt. Deinde equum vident. Celeriter equus per viam ad Paulum mulumque venit. In equo est monachus in cucullo. Equus est territus. Equus Paulum mulumque videt et subito e via declinat. Monachus ex equo in terram cadit et equus celeriter in silvam abit. Monachus in terra iacet.

<b>abit</b>	(s/he) departs
<b>audiunt</b>	(they) hear
<b>cadit</b>	(s/he) falls
<b>celeriter</b>	quickly



clamat	(s/he) shouts
cucullo (cucullus)	hood
declinat	(it) swerves
deinde	then, next
iacet	(s/he) lies
io!	heyup!
subito	suddenly
terram (terra)	ground
terrītus	scared
venit	(s/he) comes
viam (via)	road
vide(n)t	see

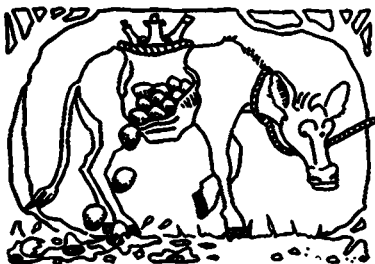
### Practice (ii)

1 Choose the correct word and translate:

- (a) Monachi per (via/viam) ambulāt.
- (b) Mulus in (agrum/agro) est.
- (c) Equus, a (monachos/monachis) terrītus, e monasterio venit.
- (d) Monachus ex (equum/equo) in (terra/terram) cadit.

2 Choose the correct preposition and translate:

- (a) (In/Cum) silva, monachus  
(in/ex) equo cadit  
et (ab/in) terra iacet.



- (b) Ova (in/e) sarcina  
(per/in) terram cadunt.

(c) *Mulus (e/per) silvam  
(in/ad) monasterium  
ambulat.*



## About Latin

### Speaking as the Romans did ...

A recording of Cicero making a speech or Virgil reciting his poetry would be a fine thing. The best we can do twenty centuries later is tentatively reconstruct the sound of Latin, letter by letter, syllable by syllable, from various bits and pieces of evidence. Much is disputed, much open to interpretation. But we have to live with this, for no one can begin to appreciate a literature – which was written for recital – without some idea of its sound. Our reconstruction may be a somewhat incomplete jigsaw puzzle, but so too is that of Elizabethan English, and that hasn't stopped production of Shakespeare's plays. So with all the help which academic findings can give us we shall set about putting flesh on the skeleton and breathe life back into the ancient texts.

We would be hard put to identify just one correct pronunciation in any case. Latin was the first language of the empire of Rome, which lasted for over half a millennium, and stretched from the Crimea to Spain, Edinburgh to Egypt. For centuries Latin was the language of the entire known world. Looking back over the emergence of English, our international language today, whom should we choose as its most correct speaker? Alfred the Great? Abraham Lincoln? Nelson Mandela? At least with Latin we can limit our attention to the two centuries of classical Latin, but even within this briefer span changes will have occurred – a recording of Florence Nightingale suggests our own pronunciation has changed considerably in the past hundred and fifty years or so.

The clearest evidence we have is of the sound of the individual letters themselves. This evidence comes from ancient

commentators who give detailed advice about certain sounds (that it was given at all can be taken as a symptom of variance if not change); other clues come from transliteration into and out of other languages (e.g. Greek *Kaisar* for 'Caesar', and *Oualerios* for 'Valerius'); also from puns and plays on words, rhymes and assonance; and from the sub-Latin, or 'Romance' languages, French, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, of which the more isolated and conservative dialects are especially interesting – *centum*'s hard 'c', for instance, in Sardinian (*kentu*, a hundred).

Latin	English	French	Spanish	Italian
unus, una	one	un, une	un(o), una	un(o), una
septem	seven	sept	siete	sette
centum	hundred	cent	ciento	cento

Stress and intonation are less secure. Latin stress was probably similar to our own, where the accent falls on the penultimate syllable, or if that syllable is weak, the one before it: *Augústus*, *Cícero*. Some hold the view that the initial syllable had the weight of accent, particularly in pre-classical Latin. This idea is prompted by the weakening of first syllables when they are compounded and made second syllable: *facere*, *perficere*; *capere*, *recipere*. Even after the classical period we see this stress in, for example, the Italian *pellegrino* (from Latin *peregrinus*), whose initial syllable was given enough weight for the word to arrive in English as 'pilgrim'. But we should not take this first-syllable theory too far. Almost all the examples cited involve a compound with a prefix, which would naturally be stressed on first formation. Put the accent on the second syllable of a compound, and it will soon lose the prefix and revert to the simple form. Even *pellegrino* was once a compounded form, being 'a person from across the field': *per-ager-inus*.

An 'm' in the middle of a word was very similar to ours, but at the end of a word appears to lose much of its consonantal value. For instance, say *septem* (*seven*) without closing your lips on the final 'm'. It is interesting to note that many other European languages, such as Bulgarian, Dutch and German, have a nasalized ending (-m/-n) for their word for 'seven' but the Romance languages derived directly from Latin all lose it (see the table above). This 'm' is also missing from some Latin inscriptions: e.g. *scriptum est* (*it was written*): written as *scriptust*. In classical Latin poetry a final 'm' is treated like a

vowel if it appears before another vowel, and is elided. In medieval Latin the final 'm' appears to be a more complete sound, no doubt reinforced by students of classical Latin learning the accusative case: a schoolmaster had to be impressed that you knew *silvam* from *silva* and so you spelt and hummed it for all it was worth with none of the halfway nasalizing of the classical sound. Literacy is a conservative influence on the inflexions of any language: it is no coincidence that the English language lost many of its own inflexions after the Norman Conquest took away its function as a written language.

Thus we can guess with some confidence that the final 'm' of *septem* was sounded, if openly, by educated speakers who were taught both to spell words and enunciate them until their tongues were sore; but that this sound tended to be reduced in ordinary speech, with its stress on the syllable-before-last, to the point of eventual extinction in the Romance languages.

Differences between literary and spoken Latin – or 'vulgar' Latin (*vulgus*: crowd, public) – were not confined to sound. The syntax of speech was inevitably looser and more straightforward than that of the page. There were also differences in vocabulary: *equus* was the literary man's word for horse (*equestrian*, *equine*, *equitation* are among the learned and 'posh' words coined after the Middle Ages), while a cart-driver made do with a *caballus* (*cheval*, *caballo*, *cavalry* and possibly *cabbie*). We shall never know how far Cicero carried his literary style into ordinary speech, but he certainly retained something of his elaborate style in letters to his friends. One thinks of Queen Victoria's famous grumble at Gladstone, the Prime Minister, telling him not to address her as if she were a public meeting.

Spoken idioms will, conversely, have in some measure been employed by writers, not so much to create a simple, plain style but to embellish a dramatic effect or intimate moment. Our unlettered cart-driver, however, would have struggled with all the allusions to Greek mythology and legends, and even in the one or two more accessible pieces, he might have found satirists firing sharpened verses at him for the din he made in going about his daily business.

In the fourth and fifth centuries AD, the early Christians gave fresh impetus to literary Latin and for a while welded it to the vulgar form. The gospels had originally been written in Greek but it was Latin translations, in particular St Jerome's bible (the

Vulgate), which wooed the western world to the new religion. The language of the pulpit had to be simple and straightforward since it was aimed primarily at those with little or no schooling in literacy and rhetoric. In tandem with Christianity's populist tendency was the intellectualizing of theologians caught up in debates such as the nature of the Trinity, the 'three-in-one-ness' of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, a controversy which fuelled the fires of early heresies, and which gave renewed life to the language of philosophy and rhetoric.

## Revision

1 Add the missing forms to the tables:

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)			puer
Accusative (object)	silvam		
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)		mulo	puero
	Plural		
Nominative (subject)			
Accusative (object)	silvas		
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)			pueris

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)	vĭnum	liber	ancilla
Accusative (object)		librum	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)	vĭno		ancilla
	Plural		
Nominative (subject)	vina		ancillae
Accusative (object)	vina	libros	
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)		libris	

2 Change the underlined words into the singular, alter any other words which may be affected, and translate:

- (a) Discipuli in culinam ambulant.
- (b) Presbyteri cibum vinumque saepe desiderant.
- (c) Mulus per silvas semper venit.
- (d) Magister libros, discipuli vinum desiderant.

3 Translate into Latin:

- (a) The horses work in neither the wood nor the field.
- (b) The monk carries the perfumes in the bag.
- (c) The priest walks with the students through the wood towards the monastery.
- (d) Students are not priests.

4 Do you know what these words mean? If not...

ager	magister	ovum
terra	via	per
e(x)	oppidum	ubi
iacet	a(b)	habitat
culina	venit	mittit
audiunt	vident	hodie
semper	clamat	subito

How many English words can you think of which are related to these?

## Living Latin

1 *Ille quidem iurata negat, sed credere durum est.*

(Tibullus, Elegies i, 6, 7)

*She denies it under oath, but it's hard to believe her.*

2 \**Beati mites quoniam ipsi possidebunt terram.*

(St Matthew v, 4)

*Blessed are the meek for they will inherit the earth.*

3 \**Gloria in excelsis Deo et in terra pax hominibus bonae voluntatis.*

(Gloria)

*Glory be to God on high and on earth peace to men of good will.*

4 *Dum nos fata sinunt oculos satiemus amore.*

(Propertius ii, 15, 23)

*While the fates allow us let us fill our eyes with love.*

5 Oro, si quis adhuc precibus locus, exue mentem.

(Virgil, Aeneid iv, 319)

*I beg you, if there's still time for entreaties, change your mind.*

6 \*Non veni vocare iustos, sed peccatores in paenitentiam.

(St Luke v, 32)

*I have not come to welcome the righteous, but the sinners to repentance.*

7 Exitiabilis superstitio rursum erumpebat, non modo per Iudaeam, originem eius mali, sed per urbem etiam quo cuncta undique atrocia aut pudenda confluunt celebranturque.

(Tacitus, Annals xv, 44)

*The deadly superstition broke out again, not only in Judaea, the source of this trouble, but also in the capital where from every corner all things sleaze-ridden and shameful ooze together and come into vogue.*

\*post-classical

# 04

## **figura feminae** the figure of a woman

**In this unit you will learn about**

- the genitive
- questions
- and find out more about Latin in ‘“Anyone” for a cancan?’



## The genitive ('of') case

The nominative case is for subjects, the accusative for objects (and also follows some prepositions), and the ablative is the *in*, *on*, *with*, *by* or *from* case. Now for the genitive:

	Nominative	Accusative	Genitive	Ablative
Sing.	silva	silvam	<b>silvae</b>	silva
	mulus	mulum	<b>mulī</b>	mulo
	vinum	vinum	<b>vini</b>	vino
Plural	silvae	silvas	<b>silvarum</b>	silvis
	mulī	mulos	<b>mulorum</b>	mulis
	vina	vina	<b>vinorum</b>	vinis

The genitive can almost always be translated with the preposition 'of...'. This may be the possessive 'of':

**Benedicti** vinum

*the wine of Benedict*  
(Benedict's wine)

**feminae** cucullus

*the hood of the woman*  
(the woman's hood)

The 'of' case may also describe a quantity:

amphora **vini**  
sarcina **ovorum**

*an amphora of wine*  
*a bag of eggs*

The 'of' case can be 'subjective' or 'objective':

timor **Danorum**

*fear of the Danes* (either  
another's fear of them or  
the Danes' own fear)

amor **Dei**

*love of God* (either another's  
love of God or God's own  
love)

► **Femina in terra iacet** *The woman lies on the ground*

### Shared endings key

-ī muli: nominative plural  
mulī, vini: 'of ...' genitive case

-ae silvae: nominative plural  
silvae: 'of ...' genitive case

Monachus in terra iacet. Equus, ab umbris territus, e via in silvam effugit. Vento enim folia et rami crepitant et equus, umbrarum ramorumque timidus, nunc per silvas ad monasterium festinat.

Immotus in terra iacet monachus. Paulus ad monachum currit. Figura tamen non monachi sed feminae est. Paulus feminam spectat. Cucullus feminae est scissus. Paulus feminam tunica protegit.

	<b>crepitant</b>	<i>(they) rustle</i>
	<b>currit</b>	<i>(s/he) runs</i>
	<b>effugit</b>	<i>(s/he) flees</i>
	<b>enim</b>	<i>for, you see</i>
	<b>feminam, feminae (femina)</b>	<i>woman</i>
	<b>festinat</b>	<i>(s/he) hurries</i>
	<b>figura</b>	<i>shape</i>
	<b>folia (folium)</b>	<i>leaves</i>
	<b>immotus</b>	<i>still, motionless</i>
	<b>protegit</b>	<i>(s/he) covers</i>
	<b>rami (ramus)</b>	<i>branches</i>
	<b>scissus</b>	<i>torn</i>
	<b>tamen</b>	<i>however</i>
	<b>timidus</b>	<i>fearful</i>
	<b>tunica</b>	<i>tunic, dress</i>
	<b>vento (ventus)</b>	<i>wind</i>

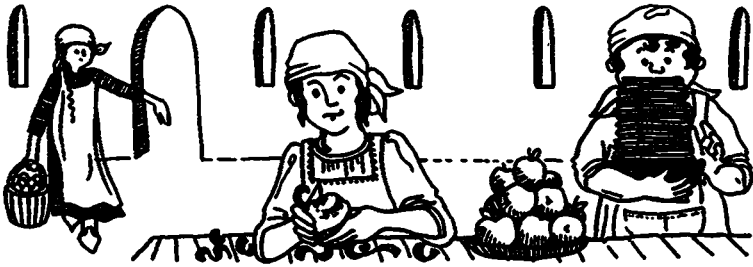
### Practice (i)

1 Add the missing forms:

Case	Singular		
Nominative (subject)	<b>terra</b>	<b>ramus</b>	<b>folium</b>
Accusative (object)			
Genitive (of)			
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)	<b>terra</b>		
	Plural		
Nominative (subject)	<b>terrae</b>		<b>folia</b>
Accusative (object)		<b>ramos</b>	
Genitive (of)			
Ablative (by, with, from, in, on)	<b>terris</b>		

2 Add the missing endings and translate:

(a) *Feminae in culina monasteri\_\_ laborant.*



(b) *Ova in tunicam femin\_\_ cadunt.*



(c) *Discipuli vinum Benedict\_\_ bibunt.*



3 Identify the cases of the underlined nouns, and translate:

(a) *Discipuli vinum ancillarum desiderant.*

(b) *Stephanus est magister scholae.*

(c) Paulus est Stephani discipulus.

(d) Mulus est silvarum timidus.

4 Put these nouns into the genitive singular, and genitive plural:

(a) ramus *branch* (b) ager *field* (c) ovum *egg*

(d) umbra *shadow* (e) ancilla *maid*

## Questions

A question may be introduced by a question word such as *ubi?* *where?*, *quis?* *who?* and *quid?* *what?* Without such an interrogative word to introduce the question, the suffix *-ne* is added to the first word:

Tu-ne vales?

*Are you well?*

Ubi femina habitat?

*Where does the woman live?*

Cur in terra femina iacet?

*Why is the woman lying on the ground?*

The 'is' in the third example above is part of the verbal phrase 'is lying', represented in Latin by *iacet* (and not *est*: see 'Verbs' on p. vii).

Some questions expect the answer 'yes' or 'no'. *Nonne* expects the answer 'yes', *num* the answer 'no':

Nonne Benedictus in culina est?

*Surely Benedict is in the kitchen?*

Num Paulus est episcopus?

*Surely Paul is not a bishop?*

## ► Ubi sum? Where am I?

Paulus neque videre neque audire equum feminae potest. Equus e silvis ad monasterium festinat. Femina diu iacet immota. Paulus est anxius et mulus trepidus. 'Te miseram!' gemit Paulus. Femina oculos aperit et Paulum spectat. /Nonne es mortua?' rogat Paulus.

'Mortua? Non ita. Ubi sum? In silvis?'

'Ita vero,' inquit Paulus.

'Ubi est equus?'

'Lente, lente! Vales-ne? /Vis-ne aquam bibere?'

'Non ita, tibi gratias. Equus-ne adest?'

'Non ita. Ramos umbrasque timet. Et tu, vales-ne?'

'Valeo. O malum est!' clamat femina.

'Lente! Quis es?'

adest	(s/he, it) is present, here
anxius	concerned
aperit	opens
aquam (aqua)	water
audire	to hear
bibere	to drink
diu	for a long time
es	you are
inquit	(s/he) says, said
ita vero	yes
malum est	it is bad! curses!
mortua	dead
non ita	no, not so
oculos (oculus)	eyes
potest	(s/he) is able, can
rogat	(s/he) asks
sum	I am
te miseram	you poor thing
tibi gratias	thank you
timet	(s/he, it) fears
trepidus	nervous
valeo (-es)	I am (you are) well
videre	to see
vis	you want, wish

## Practice (ii)

1 Answer the questions with the correct form of the verb *to be*:

- (a) Quis es? \_\_\_\_ Paulus.
- (b) Qui estis? \_\_\_\_ Stephani discipuli.
- (c) Quis est? \_\_\_\_ episcopus.
- (d) Ubi sum? \_\_\_\_ in silva.

sum	I am	sumus	we are
es	you are	estis	you are (pl.)
est	s/he, it/there is	sunt	they/there are

2 Make up questions which lead to these answers:

- (a) Mulus est in silva.
- (b) Paulus in bibliotheca laborat quod est discipulus.
- (c) Non ita, femina non mortua est.
- (d) Stephanus est magister.

## 'Anyone' for a cancan?

In the medieval period a 'clerical' worker was more often than not a clergyman. The Church first became active in government and administration during the latter days of the Roman empire, and became even more so after it collapsed. Libraries and schools might have died out altogether if the early monasteries had not survived to house them. Monks would sing, read and write Latin, much of which was religious and some secular. Hymns, liturgy, lives of saints, histories, charters, letters and poems all contribute to a rich variety of writing produced over more than a millennium. Sub-classical imitations were carefully crafted, and there was looser stuff too influenced by the respective native languages.

The spoken Latin of the empire had long since disintegrated into the Romance languages, intermingling with local speech habits and evolving with the peoples who spoke it. In France students of Latin have tended to pronounce Latin as they do French (e.g. 'qu' as 'k', not 'kw'). This has an interesting bearing on the origin of the word 'cancan', which is said by some to be derived from the Latin word *quamquam*. *Quamquam* usually means 'although', but the connection between 'although' and a dance is not easy to fathom. More likely is a less well-known meaning of *quamquam* – 'anyone' in the feminine, 'any girl', i.e. no fixed partner. Another theory ascribes the cancan to a 'scandalous' dance, again the origin being the Latin word *quamquam*, the scandal being a row during the Reformation: a few priests in France had adopted the pronunciation favoured in northern (and Protestant) Europe, 'kwamkwam', only to incur the severe displeasure of the French authorities. Even the pronunciation of a dying language could have life-threatening implications.

In England, as elsewhere, Latin was pronounced according to local speech habits. In the years following the Norman Conquest of 1066, English was strongly influenced by French. 'Julius Caesar', which was 'Yoolius Ky-sser' in classical times, was pronounced 'Joolius Seizer' by the many schoolmasters of French origin, and 'Kikero' became 'Sissero', 'Wergilius' 'Vurdgil'.

Latin is not a parent language of English, but the number of loan-words, of which many arrived via French, make it a most generous uncle. New words have one of three sources: they are

either new formations, or taken from another language, or a mixture of the two. The spelling of certain words may be changed, or stabilized, at a later date (e.g. Old English *discipul* and *munuc* which were to become *disciple* and *monk*). It may be that a parent language coined the word, or itself borrowed from another source (e.g. *elephant*: Egyptian to Greek to Latin to French to English). Origins are not always clear, and there is sometimes more than one source behind a word's widespread use.

**Some loan-words taken  
before the Norman  
Conquest (1066)**

castle (castellum-l)  
disciple (discipulus-l)  
monk (monachus-l)

**Some post-1066 arrivals  
via French**

desire (désirer/desiderare)  
oil (huile/oleum)  
silence (silence/silentium)

In the eighth century Charlemagne had wanted to improve the schools within his empire, and employed an English scholar, Alcuin, to raise the standard of Latin taught in them. Similar initiatives followed over the next few centuries, culminating at the end of the middle ages in the Renaissance, when writers, artists and scholars were guided and inspired almost exclusively by classical models.

It was less easy to impose uniformity on the spoken language. The spoken Latin of the empire had already evolved into the vernacular languages of the Romance countries, and the Latin-as-a-second-language spoken in the medieval period became rather homeless and fragmentary. Different countries and regions could barely understand each other's use of the language, and the sound of ecclesiastical Latin was far from uniform. Even in the churches Latin was not going to last long, at least not in the countries where the Reformation was gathering momentum and allegiance to Rome would be cast aside. Latin's fading role as an international language and the continued rise of the vernacular languages was in one sense the eventual triumph of vulgar Latin over its literary counterpart. But once retired from active life, Latin becomes provider, and feeds the vernacular languages with vast numbers of new words and expressions.

# Revision

1 Write sentences as answers to these questions:

- (a) Ubi est femina?
- (b) Cur equus feminae e silva festinat?
- (c) Ubi magister scholae laborat?
- (d) Quid mulus portat?

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Are we in a wood?
- (b) The woman's horse is able to hear the wind.
- (c) The mule carries the monk's bags.
- (d) Surely the students do not long for Benedict's wine?

3 Add the missing forms:

	Singular		
Nominative		tunica	
Accusative			
Genitive			
Ablative	vento	tunica	
	Plural		
Nominative	venti		
Accusative		tunicas	ova
Genitive			
Ablative			ovis

4 How well do you know these words?

cur	ventus	tunica
currit	tamen	enim
nonne	num	quis
quid	femina	schola
timet	folium	ramus
ita vero	non ita	adest

What English words can you think of, which are in part at least descended from these Latin words? The English word *via* is derived from the ablative of *via*. Can you see how?



## ► Living Latin

- 1 \**Nemo servus potest duobus dominis servire.*

(St Luke xvi, 13)

*No one can be a slave to two masters.*

- 2 \**Quis maior est, qui recumbit an qui ministrat?*

(St Luke xxii, 27)

*Whom do we value more, the one who sits for dinner or the one who serves?*

- 3 \**Alcuinum, de Britannia Saxonici generis hominem, virum undecumque doctissimum, praeceptorem habuit.*

(Einhard, Vita Karoli xxv)

*He (Charlemagne) employed Alcuin as teacher, a fellow from Britain, of Saxon blood, in every respect a most learned man.*

- 4 \**Heu, cuculus nobis fuerat cantare suetus,  
quae te nunc rapuit hora nefanda tuis?  
Heu, cuculus, cuculus, qua te regione reliqui,  
infelix nobis illa dies fuerat.*

(Alcuin, Versus de Cuculo)

*Mourn the little cuckoo who liked to sing to us.*

*What unspeakable moment snatched you from your friends?*

*Little cuckoo, little cuckoo, where did I leave you?*

*What a wretched day that was for us.*

- 5 \**Hic Harold Rex interfectus est et fuga verterunt Angli.*

(Bayeux Tapestry)

*Here King Harold was slain and the English turned and fled.*

- 6 \**Sidus clarum  
puellarum,  
flos et decus omnium  
rosa veris,  
quae videris  
clarior quam liliū.*

(12th century anon.)

*Bright star of maidens, everything's flower and ornament, you are like a spring rose, more lovely than a lily.*

\*post-classical

# 05

## **Egbertae filia**

Egberta's daughter

**In this unit you will learn about**

- the vocative case
- adjectives: -us, -a, -um
- and find out more about Latin in 'Reformation and Renaissance – life after death'

## Declensions: the nominative and genitive

All nouns belong to one of five groups, or 'declensions'. Nouns like *silva*, *umbra* or *Lucia* belong to the first, while those like *mulus*, *magister* or *vinum* all belong to the second declension. *Amor* and *timor*, which appeared briefly in the previous unit, belong to the third – but more about them later. All these declensions and cases mean that some endings do double and treble duty: the ending *-a*, for example, might be the nominative or ablative singular of *silva*, or neuter plural of *vinum*. So to help establish a noun's declension (and therefore the endings), dictionaries show a noun's nominative and genitive endings:

First declension:	<i>silva</i> , <i>silvae</i>
Second declension:	<i>mulus</i> , <i>muli</i> (also: <i>puer</i> , <i>pueri</i> ; <i>ager</i> , <i>agri</i> <i>a field</i> <i>vinum</i> , <i>vini</i> (neuter))

## ► Lucia

'Quis es? Ubi habitas?' rogat Paulus.

'In castello,' inquit femina.

'Tu-ne es Egberta, castelli domina?'

'Non Egberta, sed Egbertae filia, Lucia sum. Et tu, quis es?'

'Sum Paulus, et in monasterio habito.'

'Es presbyter?'

'Non presbyter, sed discipulus sum.'

'Episcopi-ne discipulus es?'

'Non episcopi sed Stephani.'

'Quis est Stephanus? In monasterio habitat?'

'Stephanus est monachus et scholae magister.'

'Me miseram! Ubi est ille caballus?'

'Lente! Fortasse est in agris cum monasterii equis. Age, mecum ad monasterium veni. In mulum ascendas.'

<i>age</i>	<i>come on!</i>
<i>ascendas</i>	<i>you may climb</i>
<i>caballus-i</i> [m]	<i>horse</i>
<i>castellum-i</i> [n]	<i>castle</i>
<i>domina-ae</i> [f]	<i>lady, mistress</i>
<i>Egberta-ae</i>	<i>Egberta</i>
<i>episcopus-i</i> [m]	<i>bishop</i>
<i>filia-ae</i> [f]	<i>daughter</i>
<i>fortasse</i>	<i>perhaps</i>
<i>habito (-as) (-at)</i>	<i>I (you) (s/he) live</i>
<i>ille</i>	<i>that</i>

Lucia-ae	Lucia
me miseram	just my luck
mecum	with me
veni	come!

## Practice (I)

1 Fill the gaps:

Nominative	Genitive
sarcina	sarcinae
umbra	
ovum	
puer	
	magistri
episcopus	
	Egbertae
liber	

2 Make a list of all the nouns you have met (showing the nominative and genitive endings) similar to:

- (a) silva, silvae (e.g. sarcina-ae, Lucia-ae, etc.)
- (b) mulus, muli (e.g. episcopus-i, Paulus-i, etc.)
- (c) vinum, vini (e.g. ovum-i, castellum-i, etc.)

## The vocative case

Second declension nouns (those like mulus-i) have a special ending for when they are being spoken to. This is called the 'vocative case': mule for mulus, (Brute for Brutus in Et tu Brute!). Most other vocative forms are the same as the nominative, e.g. 'o Lucia'.

## Adjectives: sanctus, sancta, sanctum

Adjectives give nouns more detail or colour: a *saintly* bishop, a *tired* maid. A Latin adjective is said to 'agree' with the noun it describes in gender (masculine, feminine or neuter), number (singular or plural) and case (nominative, accusative, etc.):

Sanctus episcopus et ancilla  
fessa in agro sedent.

Multae feminae per silvam  
obscuram ambulant.

Liber magnus in  
monasterio est.

*The saintly bishop and tired  
maid sit in the field.*

*Many women are walking  
through the dark wood.*

*The large book is in the  
monastery.*

The masculine endings of adjectives like sanct-us are identical to those of mul-us, the feminine to those of silv-a, and neuter to those of vin-um. In the final example above magnus agrees with liber even though their endings are not identical: both words are nominative masculine singular.

The position of an adjective may be before or after the noun it describes. You will come across adjectives placed several words before or after the nouns they qualify, especially in poetry. The endings help you match the two together. Some adjectives appear after a verb (as in English):

Mulus est lentus.

*The mule is slow.*

## ► E silvis veniunt *They come out of the woods*

Obscuram per silvam ad monasterium veniunt. Paulus mulum ducit. Lucia in mulo sedet. Mulus est lentus. Silva est umbrosa. Lucia Paulum rogat: 'Episcopus-ne sanctus in monasterio manet?'

'Episcopus? Nescio. Sanctus episcopus? Vel saevus?'

'Nonne est sanctus?'

'Episcopus est saevus, quod semper Stephanum nos discipulos in bibliotheca claudere iubet.'

'Discipuli-ne estis boni studiosique?'

'Certe, semper.'

'Num vos discipuli semper boni estis? Fortasse mali, ignavi, somnolenti estis.'

'Mali? Ignavi? Nos? locosa es.'

'Cur in silva ambulas? Cur studiosus in bibliotheca non laboras?'

'Episcopus certe est malus, gulosus, saevus, vinolentus ....'

'Ssst. Maledicis. Episcopus est Egbertae avunculus.'

'Vero? Episcopus est cognatus Egbertae? Quid ergo? Hic, o Domina, est mulus. Mulus est cognatus equorum qui in monasterii agris habitant, eho mule?' Paulus ridet. Sed neque Lucia neque mulus ridet. Nunc enim mulus et Luciam et onerosas cibo multo vinoque sarcinas portat. 'Ignoscas, o Lucia!' inquit Paulus. Per silvas silentio procedunt. Mox magnos monasterii muros vident et e silvis in agros veniunt.

<b>ambulas</b>	<i>you walk</i>
<b>avunculus-i [m]</b>	<i>uncle</i>
<b>bonus-a-um</b>	<i>good</i>
<b>certe</b>	<i>certainly, yes</i>
<b>claudere</b>	<i>to lock</i>
<b>cognatus-i [m]</b>	<i>kinsman</i>
<b>ducit</b>	<i>(s/he) leads</i>
<b>eho</b>	<i>eh</i>
<b>et... et</b>	<i>both... and</i>
<b>gulosus-a-um</b>	<i>greedy</i>
<b>hic</b>	<i>here</i>
<b>ignavus-a-um</b>	<i>lazy</i>
<b>ignoscas</b>	<i>forgive (me), sorry</i>
<b>iocosus-a-um</b>	<i>full of jokes, humorous</i>
<b>iubet</b>	<i>(s/he) orders, tells</i>
<b>laboras</b>	<i>you work</i>
<b>magnus-a-um</b>	<i>great, large</i>
<b>maledicis</b>	<i>you slander</i>
<b>malus-a-um</b>	<i>troublesome, bad</i>
<b>manet</b>	<i>(s/he) stays</i>
<b>mox</b>	<i>soon, presently</i>
<b>multus-a-um</b>	<i>much, many</i>
<b>murus-i [m]</b>	<i>wall</i>
<b>nescio</b>	<i>I don't know</i>
<b>nos</b>	<i>us</i>
<b>num</b>	<i>surely... not</i>
<b>obscurus-a-um</b>	<i>dark</i>
<b>procedunt</b>	<i>(they) go forward</i>
<b>qui</b>	<i>who</i>
<b>quid ergo?</b>	<i>so what?</i>
<b>ridet</b>	<i>(s/he) laughs</i>
<b>saevus-a-um</b>	<i>cruel, mean</i>
<b>sedet</b>	<i>(s/he) sits</i>
<b>silentium-l [n]</b>	<i>silence</i>
<b>somnulentus-a-um</b>	<i>sleepy</i>
<b>studiosus-a-um</b>	<i>hard-working</i>
<b>umbrosus-a-um</b>	<i>full of shadows</i>
<b>vel</b>	<i>or</i>
<b>veniunt</b>	<i>(they) come</i>
<b>vero</b>	<i>indeed</i>
<b>vinolentus-a-um</b>	<i>fond of wine</i>
<b>vos</b>	<i>you</i>

## Practice (ii)

1 Fill each gap with the appropriate form of *furiosus* *angry* and *sanctus* *saintly*: (fugat = *chases*)



- (a) Bestiae \_\_\_\_\_  
Christianos \_\_\_\_\_ fugant.



- (b) Christianus \_\_\_\_\_  
bestias \_\_\_\_\_ fugat.



- (c) Christianum \_\_\_\_\_  
bestiae \_\_\_\_\_ fugant.

2 Change the underlined words to the plural form (other endings should be changed if affected) and translate the new version:

- (a) Bestia furiosa sanctum monachum spectat.  
(b) Liber magnus in bibliotheca est.  
(c) Discipulus ignavus mulum furiosum in agro videt.  
(d) Monachus somnulentus in bibliotheca non laborat.

## Reformation and Renaissance – life after death

The Renaissance was a 'rebirth', a renewal of interest in classical literature and art. Many Greek and Latin books which had previously been ignored or unknown were brought to light and translated. There were imitations as well as translations, and original works were written in the authors' own languages which echoed classical precedents in form or content. Schoolmen and scholars redoubled their efforts to introduce classical standards of grammar and syntax, and medieval Latin as a living language was all but laid to rest, helped on its way by the Reformers' distrust of anything Roman. Latin, in its classical form, had achieved immortality: dead languages do not change, and the linguistic rules which govern their use will always remain the same.

The translation of classical texts into English demanded a wider range of vocabulary than it was able to supply. There were not the words to express the many new ideas of religion, astronomy, science and philosophy which were stimulated by the interest in these ancient texts, and often the simplest solution was to import a word direct from the Latin or Greek. Many of these words in time lost their foreign status, and became part of our language (some with slight modifications, e.g. *splendidus* was first *splendidious* and then settled as *splendid*). The anglicized pronunciation of these loan-words will in turn have influenced our pronunciation of original Latin.

Latin was very closely caught up in the religious conflicts in the sixteenth century. It was, after all, the language of the Church, where it had survived as a spoken language for over a thousand years. Latin was a symbol of all things Roman, and since scholars were being strangled, burned and beheaded for denying or affirming Rome, it's no small mercy that Latin survived at all. In England, classical scholars took sides in the dispute over the correct language for the liturgy – Sir John Cheke spoke out against Latin and assisted Cranmer with his Book of Common Prayer. Some wanted to follow the lead of the Dutch scholar, Erasmus, and recreate a more authentic classical sound. Others wanted most of all to rid Latin of its association with the Church. Thus the sound of Latin, now deprived of its status as an independent, if ritualized, language, lived for a brief while in



a limbo of learned good intentions before slipping into the stream of English and a pronunciation along the lines of our own speech habits.

A further complication is the famous 'vowel shift' which occurred in English at this time. Vowel quantities of Latin-derived words had been changing since pre-Conquest times. *Pater*, for instance, has a short 'a' in Latin which was lengthened on arrival in English, possibly by association with the long 'a' in 'father'. The vowel shift then brought about a further change, leaving us with the 'pay-ter' we hear in period dramas. Through change of quantity or vowel shift or both, we now have in English (and, until as late as the nineteenth century, in Latin): *bone-us* from *bonus* (classical pronunciation: 'bonnus'); *mise-er* from *miser* ('missair'), *fill-ial* from *filius* ('feelius'), *wine* from *vinum* ('weenum').

If Latin in this country was somewhat anglicized, it is even more pertinent to say English was Latinized. Coining new words became something of a fad, beyond the requirement of scientists and translators. Some loan-words which had settled into English, many having arrived via French, were reformed to make them resemble the original Latin ones more closely. We now have many cases of pairs of words, which have subsequently developed different meanings:

Latin	Pre-1500	Post-1500
securus	sure	secure
computare	count	compute
desiderare	desire	desiderate

Not all these later additions survived (e.g. *desiderate*). Some words were respelt and replaced the earlier forms altogether – a headache for all those who struggle with spelling:

Latin	Pre-1500	Post-1500
dubium	doute	doubt
septem	set (French)	sept (French)
subtilis	sutil	subtle

Some Latin-derived words can appear dry and pompous. Comedians from Molière to Mrs Bucket have had plenty of mileage from unnecessarily tortuous circumlocutions. In the sixteenth century one poor fellow closed a letter to someone he

hoped to impress with 'I relinquish to fatigue your intelligence....'. However, quirk and affectation aside, Latin has proved to be a rich source of new words. Some loan-words have settled in so well that you would not notice their origin, and their crispness and nuance help to give English its unequalled richness and variety.

## Revision

### 1 Fill the gaps:

Latin	English	Derivative(s)
ovum-i	egg	oval
lucidus-a-um	bright	
murus-i		
bestia-ae		
folium-i		
dubium-i	doubt	
loquax	talkative	
vir-i	man	
iratus-a-um	angry	

### 2 Change the underlined words into the plural and alter any other words which are affected, and translate:

- Monachus-ne ignavus in agris laborat?
- Num discipulus cognatus Luciae est?
- Paulus magistri librum in bibliotheca spectat.
- Num Benedictus ancillae avunculus est!

### 3 Write out sanctus-a-um, singular and plural, in all the cases you have met so far.

### 4 Check you know these words:

castellum-i	episcopus-i	manet
sedet	iubet	ridet
mox	certe	vero
bonus-a-um	malus-a-um	multus-a-um
magnus-a-um	gulosus-a-um	saevus-a-um
sanctus-a-um	furiosus-a-um	lentus-a-um
fessus-a-um	bibliotheca-ae	

What English words are derived from these?

- 5 During the Renaissance many new adjectives were coined from Latin roots. Identify the English meanings of the Latin nouns below, and the English adjective derived from the Latin word:

e.g. <i>noctes</i>	<i>night</i>	<i>nocturnal</i>
<i>noctes</i>	<i>son</i>	
<i>canis</i>	<i>church</i>	
<i>culina</i>	<i>house</i>	
<i>decem</i>	<i>sun</i>	
<i>domus</i>	<i>brother</i>	
<i>ecclesia</i>	<i>nights</i>	
<i>filius</i>	<i>mother</i>	
<i>frater</i>	<i>dog</i>	
<i>mater</i>	<i>cattle</i>	
<i>sol</i>	<i>ten</i>	
<i>boves</i>	<i>kitchen</i>	

- 6 Translate into Latin:

- Surely the bishop is not greedy?
- The tired students often sit in the field.
- Is the lady furious, Stephen?
- Do mules work in the dark wood?

## ► Living Latin

- 1 \*Ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera a malo.

(Pater Noster)

*Do not lead us into temptation but free us from evil.*

- 2 \*Beati pauperes, quia vestrum est regnum Dei.

(St Luke vi, 20)

*Blessed are the poor, for yours is the kingdom of God.*

- 3 Sequitur clades, forte an dolo principis incertum (nam utrumque auctores prodidere), sed omnibus quae huic urbi per violentiam ignium acciderunt gravior atque atrocior.

(Tacitus, Annals xv, 38)

*A disaster followed – whether accidental or by Nero's hand no one knows (both versions have their supporters) – but this city had never experienced a more serious or damaging fire.*

- 4 Eorum multitudo ingens haud proinde in crimine incendii quam odio humani generis convicti sunt.**

(Tacitus, Annals xv, 44)

*A large number of Christians were condemned, not so much on any charge of arson but because of their aversion to the human race.*

- 5 Quamquam adversus sontis et novissima exempla meritos miseratio oriebatur, tamquam non utilitate publica sed in saevitiam unius absumerentur.**

(Tacitus, Annals xv, 44)

*Despite their guilt and the deserved severity of their punishment, people began to feel pity because their destruction was not so much in the interests of the public but rather for the sadistic amusement of one man.*

- 6 Pervaserat rumor ipso tempore flagrantis urbis inisse eum domesticam scaenam et cecinisse Troianum excidium.**

(Tacitus, Annals xv, 39)

*A rumour circulated that at the very time of the fire in Rome Nero had gone on to his stage in the palace and sung of the Fall of Troy.*

\*post-classical

# 06

## **in amphitheatro saevitia**

**cruelty in the amphitheatre**

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- **verbs: potest, vult, debet**
- **infinitives**
- **adjectives: -er, -era, -erum**
  
- **and find out more about  
Latin in 'Latin wanted –  
dead or alive'**

**Adjectives: miser, misera, miserum wretched**

The endings of these adjectives are almost identical to those of sanct-us-a-um but for the nominative masculine singular (cf. presbyter and mulus). So mulus miser, mulum miserum, femina misera, feminam miseram, etc.

**Verbs: potest, vult, debet**

s/he	is/are able	want(s)	ought, owe(s)
they	potest	vult	debet
	possunt	volunt	debent

These verbs are usually followed by an infinitive (an infinitive of an English verb is formed with 'to....', e.g. *to see*, *to believe*, *to say*).

Abbatissa cantare non potest. *The abbess is unable to sing.*

Pecuniam dare debent. *They ought to give some money.*

**Latin infinitives -re**

amat	s/he loves	amare	to love
videt	s/he sees	videre	to see
scribit	s/he writes	scribere	to write
audit	s/he hears	audire	to hear
facit	s/he makes	facere	to make, do

The five verbs above each represent a different group (or conjugation). With the exception of irregular verbs like *esse* and *posse*, all Latin verbs belong to one of these five conjugations.

**📖 In bibliotheca In the library****Shared endings key**

-o	mulo, vino: ablative mulo, vino: dative ('to... / for...')
-ae	silvae: genitive, nominative plural silvae: dative ('to... / for...')
-is	mulis, silvis, vinis: ablative plural mulis, silvis, vinis: dative plural ('to... / for...')

Est meridies. Discipuli Stephanusque sunt in bibliotheca. Scholae magister discipulis historiam Christianorum bestiarumque narrat.

'Christiani multi in amphitheatro occisi sunt. Romani pro suffragiis populi ludos faciebant et magnam opulentiam ostentare volebant. Miseros Christianos! Pagani semper videre multam saevitiam volunt. Ludos in amphitheatro spectabant etiam docti, qui eos non saevos sed ineptos existimabant. Nulla enim victimis erat misericordia. Nunc nobis libri non ludi sunt grati, eho Paule? Age, Paulus-ne nobis recitare potest? Paule? Ubi est Paulus?'

'Quando Christiani, o Domine, in amphitheatro paganos mutilaverunt?' rogavit Augustinus ex discipulis unus.

'Ubi est Paulus?' inquit Stephanus qui eum non audit.

'Hodie Paulus in culina laborat,' inquit Augustinus.

'Quid? Cur Paulus in culina laborare vult? Adesse in schola debet. Paulus enim non coquus sed discipulus est.'

<b>adesse</b>	<i>to be here</i>
<b>amphitheatrum-i [n]</b>	<i>amphitheatre</i>
<b>bestia-ae [f]</b>	<i>beast</i>
<b>Christianus-i [m]</b>	<i>Christian</i>
<b>coquus-i [m]</b>	<i>cook</i>
<b>debet</b>	<i>(s/he) ought</i>
<b>doctus-i [m]</b>	<i>learned man</i>
<b>dominus-i [m]</b>	<i>lord, sir</i>
<b>eos</b>	<i>them</i>
<b>erat</b>	<i>(s/he, it, there) was</i>
<b>eum</b>	<i>him</i>
<b>existimabant</b>	<i>(they) thought</i>
<b>faciebant</b>	<i>(they) prepared</i>
<b>gratus-a-um</b>	<i>pleasing</i>
<b>historia-ae [f]</b>	<i>story</i>
<b>ineptus-a-um</b>	<i>foolish</i>
<b>laborare</b>	<i>to work</i>
<b>ludus-i [m]</b>	<i>game, show</i>
<b>meridies</b>	<i>midday</i>
<b>miseros Christianos!</b>	<i>wretched Christians</i>
<b>mutilaverunt</b>	<i>(they) did mutilate</i>
<b>narrat</b>	<i>(s/he) tells, relates</i>
<b>nobis</b>	<i>to us, for us</i>
<b>nulla misericordia(-ae)</b>	<i>no pity</i>
<b>occisi sunt</b>	<i>were killed</i>
<b>opulentia-ae [f]</b>	<i>wealth</i>
<b>ostentare</b>	<i>to show</i>
<b>paganus-i [m]</b>	<i>pagan</i>
<b>populus-i [m]</b>	<i>people</i>

<b>pro</b> [+abl.]	<i>in return for</i>
<b>quando</b>	<i>when</i>
<b>qui</b>	<i>who</i>
<b>recitare</b>	<i>to recite, read aloud</i>
<b>rogavit</b>	<i>(s/he) asked</i>
<b>Romanus-i</b> [m]	<i>a Roman</i>
<b>saevitia-ae</b> [f]	<i>cruelty</i>
<b>spectabant</b>	<i>(they) used to watch</i>
<b>suffragium-i</b> [n]	<i>vote</i>
<b>unus</b>	<i>one</i>
<b>victima-ae</b> [f]	<i>victim</i>
<b>volebant</b>	<i>(they) wanted</i>
<b>vult, volunt</b>	<i>(s/he) wants, (they) ...</i>

## Practice (i)

Choose the correct words and translate:

- (a) **Monachi abbatissam videre non (debet/possunt).**  
 (b) **Abbatissa in culina laborare (debet/volunt) sed in ecclesia monachos spectare (vult/possunt).**



## Accusative of exclamation: **Miseros Christianos!** **Me miserum!**

The phrases are both in the accusative without on the face of it being objects. This expression is called the 'accusative of exclamation'. The use of the accusative suggests they are implied objects of a hidden verb.

## Dative case: 'to, for'

This is the last of the cases to be studied. If the genitive is the 'of' case, the ablative the 'by, with, in, on' or 'from' case, then the



dative may be known as the 'to' or 'for' case. 'To' a place, or 'towards' somewhere, is expressed by ad followed by the accusative (e.g. ad monasterium *to(wards) the monastery*). Otherwise 'to' something or someone is represented by the dative case:

Augustinus Paulo amicus  
est.

*Augustine is friendly to Paul  
(or Augustine is Paul's  
friend).*

Non culinae sed scholae est  
Pauli oboedientia!

*Not to the kitchen but to the  
school is Paul's duty!*

The word in the dative is commonly an indirect, not direct, object of a verb:

Paulus Benedicto cibum  
vinumque portat.

*Paul is bringing food and  
wine for Benedict.*

Cibum vinumque is the object in the accusative, and Benedicto the indirect object in the dative.

	Nominative	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Ablative
Sing.	silva	silvam	silvae	<b>silvae</b>	silva
	mulus	mulum	mulis	<b>mulo</b>	mulo
	vinum	vinum	vini	<b>vino</b>	vino
Plural	silvae	silvas	silvarum	<b>silvis</b>	silvis
	mulis	mulos	mulorum	<b>mulis</b>	mulis
	vina	vina	vinorum	<b>vinis</b>	vinis

The dative has a small overlap with the genitive in so far as the dative may also show possession. The genitive is generally attached to another noun (e.g. magister scholae), whereas the dative is affected by a verb (often the verb 'to be'). The genitive tends to emphasize the possessor, and where the dative is used, the emphasis is on the thing(s) possessed:

Sunt Benedicto unguenta.

*The perfumes are to/for  
Benedict (Benedict has  
perfumes).*

'To' or 'for' will help you find the meaning of the dative, but these prepositions are sometimes not appropriate in a final English version. A word in the dative should be taken closely with the verb – be this an indirect object, possessive or whatever.

## ► Augustinus

Mox Stephanus e culina revenit. 'Paulus non in culina laborat sed in silvis vacat.'

'Ex oppido revenit,' inquit Augustinus, qui Paulo est amicus. 'Paulus cibum vinumque ex oppido portat.'

'Cibum vinumque? Quis iussit Paulum ad oppidum ire et cibum vinumque emere?'

'Et oleum et ova et unguenta,' inquit Augustinus.

'Unguenta? Sumus monachi! Et ova? Hic multa sunt ova.'

'Non satis Benedicto, o Magister,' inquit Augustinus. 'Paulus Benedicto cibum vinumque semper dat. Paulus culinae servus est.'

'Neque coquo neque culinae sed magistro et scholae est Pauli oboedientia,' clamavit miser magister.

'Sed nunc Paulus Benedicto est servus,' inquit Augustinus, 'et in culina cum ancillis laborat.'

'In culina cum ancillis?'

'Etiam-ne nos possumus in culina laborare, Domine?'

'St! Tacete! Ad libros! Ubi eram?'

'In culina cum ancillis?' rogant discipuli.

'Me miserum! Ah ... in amphitheatro eram.'

clamavit	wailed
dat	(s/he) gives, is giving
emere	to buy
eram	I was
ire	to go
iussit	(s/he) told, ordered
miser-a-um	wretched
oboedientia-ae [f]	duty
possumus	we are able, can
satis	enough
servus-i [m]	serf, slave
St!	Sssh!
tacete!	be quiet!
vacat	(s/he) is idle

## Practice (ii)

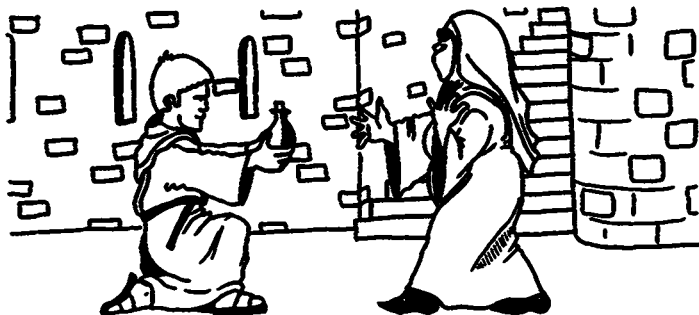
1 Add the missing forms to the tables:

	Singular			
Nominative				oleum
Accusative	agrum			
Genitive	agri		culinae	
Dative		coquo		
Ablative				oleo
	Plural			
Nominative				
Accusative				
Genitive			culinarum	oleorum
Dative		coquis		
Ablative	agris			

2 Put each noun in its correct form and translate:

(a) (Ancilla/Ancillae) (discipulos/discipulis) cibum portat.





(b) *Discipulus non (episcopi/episcopo) sed (abbatissae/abbatissa) unguentum dat.*

3 Change the underlined words to the singular (other endings should be changed if affected) and translate the new version:

- (a) *Episcopus historiam monasterii presbyteris monachisque narrat.*
- (b) *Discipuli ignavi Luciam spectant.*
- (c) *Miser mulus sarcinas onerosas semper portat.*
- (d) *Cur ancillae cum monachis laborare debent?*

## About Latin

### Latin wanted – dead or alive?

After the Renaissance Latin survived as the language of scholars and intellectuals, and with Greek was a fertile source for scientists and innovators looking for new words and names. The majority of these are unwieldy and obscure, though shorter ones were also coined, sometimes for wider commercial impact. A scientist will deliberately choose a long-winded word which has little appeal to the rest of us because he has to be as precise as he can. Any word which spills into everyday use, where it may pick up further, figurative meanings (e.g. *magnet*, *radical*, *livid*), will lose its specialist value.

Some Latin-derived words mean much the same as a native English word, though tend to be more formal: someone who admits he is ‘culpable’ is almost too clever to be given the blame (*culpa*); to ‘concur’ (*concurrere*) is somehow not as supportive as ‘agree’. But this gives the wrong impression of the Latin

language, and not an entirely representative one of its influence on English. There are also countless shorter words derived from Latin, many via French, whose origins we hardly notice. Examples with Latin ancestors in the last few passages are: *vacant*, *data*, *servile*, *labour*, *wine*, *doctor*, *popular*, *spectator*, *unit*, *history*, *obscure* and *mural*. Some Latin words have been absorbed in their original form, e.g. *aborigine*, *agenda*, *arena*, *computer*, *deficit*, *facsimile*, *genius*, *junior*, *miser*, *rabies*, *recipe*, *referendum*, *series*, *squalor*, *status*, *video* and *virus*.

The correct form of the plural of Latin-derived words remains debatable. For instance, Latin-derived words which end *-um* in the singular change to *-a* in the plural (e.g. *curriculum*, *curricula*); others are similar according to declension and form. The trouble with this rule is its inconsistency. Some loan-words like *circus* and *area* already had ordinary English plurals before the influx of further loan-words during the Renaissance. Others such as *affidavit* (*s/he has affirmed*) and *recipe* (*take... i.e. ingredients, the first word of cooking instructions*) are nouns now but in Latin were verbs. The plural of these can hardly be *affidaverunt* and *recipite*, which are the respective plural forms in Latin. Should we be receiving *boni* in place of *bonuses*? *Referendums* is heavier on the ear than *referenda*, but *agendum* is a rather unwieldy singular form of *agenda* (and though it may offend some, *agendas*, the 'plural of a plural', is now commonplace).

A number of Latin-derived words and phrases are current in legal and other technical uses of English. Recently there has been a move to rid the language of such obscure archaisms, but will the awkward phrases or forgettable acronyms which may replace them be an improvement? In any case, *ad hoc*, *status quo* and *et cetera* can scarcely be called Latin any more. These words and phrases are now part of English. And this is a good point to move on, for the purpose of this course is not to pick over Latin's lifeless present, but sample the living past.

## Revision

1 Make a phrase which is current in English with these words:

- (a) *initium-i* (*beginning*), *ab*
- (b) *annus-i* (*year*), *dominus-i* (*lord, master*)
- (c) *vita-ae* (*life*), *curriculum-i* (*course*)
- (d) *ceterus-a-um* (*other, rest*), *et*

- (e) nausea-ae (*sickness*), ad  
(f) infinitus-a-um (*endless*), ad

2 Rewrite these sentences, changing the underlined words into the plural, and translate:

- (a) Bestia-ne Christianum in amphitheatro devorat?  
(b) Monachus bonus ludos saevos non amat.  
(c) Paulus-ne coquo cibum vinumque semper portat?  
(d) Cur discipulo librum magister dat?

3 Add the missing forms to the table:

	Singular		
Case	paganus-i [m] <i>pagan</i>	oppidum-i [n] <i>town</i>	bestia-ae [f] <i>animal</i>
Nominative			
Accusative			
Genitive		oppidi	bestiae
Dative			
Ablative	pagano		
	Plural		
Nominative			
Accusative		oppida	bestias
Genitive	paganorum		
Dative			
Ablative			

4 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Paul gives much food to the cook.  
(b) The student ought to walk not with the maids but with the monks.  
(c) The monks want to watch the games but have to work in the monastery.  
(d) Is Lucia able to work in the kitchen?

5 Check you know these words:

narrat	dat	bestia-ae
dominus-i	domina-ae	populus-i
miser-a-um	qui	satis
ancilla-ae	abbatissa-ae	

6 Look at the box overleaf. How many words can you make by matching the prepositions on the left with the stems on the right – e.g. *pre* + *fer* = prefer, preference, etc.?

ad (to)	dic- (say)
con-, com-, coll- (with, together)	duc- (bring)
contra- (against)	fer- (carry, bear)
de- (down, from)	habit- (live)
e(x)- (out, from)	iac-/jac- (lie)
in-, im- (in, on)	labor- (work)
per- (through)	mit- (send)
pre- (before)	port- (carry)
pro- (forward)	scrib- (write)
re- (back)	ven- (come)
sub- (under, beneath)	
trans- (across)	

## ► Living Latin

- 1 \*Si monumentum quaeris circumspice.

(Epitaph of Christopher Wren in St Paul's Cathedral)

*If you seek a memorial, look around you.*

- 2 \*Nihil est in intellectu quod non fuerit in sensu.

(Locke, 17th century)

**Excipe: nisi ipse intellectus.**

(Leibnitz, 17th/18th century)

*There is nothing in the mind which exists separate from the senses. With one exception: the mind itself.*

- 3 \*Floreas longum, America, o beata,  
libera et felix vigeas in aevum.

(Samuel Wilson c.18th century)

*Blessed America, long may you flourish, and enjoy your freedom and good fortune far into the future.*

- 4 \*Inter Vietnamiam et Civitates Americae Unitas relationes  
diplomaticae coniunguntur. De ea re praesidens Bill Clinton  
oratione sollemni in Aedibus Albis die Martis habita nuntiavit.

(The Finnish Broadcasting Company, Nuntii Latini)

*Diplomatic relations between Vietnam and the United States of America are being restored. On that matter President Bill Clinton made an announcement in a formal speech in the White House on Tuesday.*

\*post-classical

# **revision I**

## **(units 01–06)**



1 Identify the correct form of the nouns in brackets (the nominative and genitive forms are given):

(a) *Abbatissa (bestia-ae) sanctam timet.*



(b) *Ova in (episcopus-i) ignavum cadunt.*

(c) *Liber Augustini non (discipulus-i) furiosis sed (ancilla-ae) gratus est.*



- (d) (Benedictus-i) gulosus  
unguenta (abbatissa-ae)  
odoraе desiderat.



- 2 Rewrite these sentences, changing underlined words to the plural if they are singular, or to the singular if plural. Translate the new version.

- (a) Monachus muros monasterii videre potest.  
(b) Misera ancilla semper in culina laborat.  
(c) Puer mulo cibum dat.  
(d) Cur est abbatissa in bibliotheca?  
(e) Ludos monachi non spectant.  
(f) Episcopi-ne in monasteriis habitant?  
(g) Monachus feminae aquam dat.

- 3 What do these words mean?

saepe	igitur	ad
enim	cum	ubi
quod	nunc	ex
cur	nonne	per
semper	mox	hodie

- 4 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Are the students tired?  
(b) An evil monk cannot live in the monastery.  
(c) The furious master gives books to the wretched students.  
(d) The mistress's daughter is unable to work in the kitchen. Surely she ought not to walk with the students?  
(e) Can the horses hear the mule in the wood? He is bringing the horses' food to the monastery.

5 Fill the table with the correct forms of **magnus-a-um** *large, great*:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative			
Accusative			
Genitive			
Dative			
Ablative			
Plural			
Nominative			
Accusative			
Genitive			
Dative			
Ablative			

6 Pronounce the following words in the recommended classical manner:

bonus

miser

bona fide

data

Cicero

angelus

pater

mater

et cetera

alibi

circus

recipe

alias

pauper

veto

video

agenda

genius

7 *Vespa-ae* is (a) a wasp; (b) an abbreviated version of ancient evensong; (c) an early medieval form of bicycle.

# 07

## **puer cum diabolo ambulat**

the boy walks with the devil

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- third declension nouns
- and find out more about  
Roman gods in 'Di  
immortales'

## Nouns: third declension

So far you have met the first declension (nouns like *silva*) and the second declension (nouns like *mulus*, *magister* and *vinum*). Now for the third. These nouns have many different nominative forms, but the genitive (remember a dictionary will give this form as well) of *all* third declension nouns is *-is*. The genitive will also show you the noun's stem as it appears in all cases other than the nominative, e.g.

*abbas*, *abbatis* (stem: *abbat-*) *abbot*

*arbor*, *arboris* (stem: *arbor-*) *tree*

*pater*, *patris* (stem: *patr-*) *father*

*virgo*, *virginis* (stem: *virgin-*) *maiden, girl*

Singular				
Nom.	<i>abbas</i>	<i>arbor</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>virgo</i>
Acc.	<i>abbat-em</i>	<i>arbor-em</i>	<i>patr-em</i>	<i>virgin-em</i>
Gen.	<i>abbat-is</i>	<i>arbor-is</i>	<i>patr-is</i>	<i>virgin-is</i>
Dat.	<i>abbat-i</i>	<i>arbor-i</i>	<i>patr-i</i>	<i>virgin-i</i>
Abl.	<i>abbat-e</i>	<i>arbor-e</i>	<i>patr-e</i>	<i>virgin-e</i>
Plural				
Nom.	<i>abbat-es</i>	<i>arbor-es</i>	<i>patr-es</i>	<i>virgin-es</i>
Acc.	<i>abbat-es</i>	<i>arbor-es</i>	<i>patr-es</i>	<i>virgin-es</i>
Gen.	<i>abbat-um</i>	<i>arbor-um</i>	<i>patr-um</i>	<i>virgin-um</i>
Dat.	<i>abbat-ibus</i>	<i>arbor-ibus</i>	<i>patr-ibus</i>	<i>virgin-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>abbat-ibus</i>	<i>arbor-ibus</i>	<i>patr-ibus</i>	<i>virgin-ibus</i>

## Practice (i)

1 Translate the underlined nouns into Latin in their correct case:

- with the abbots
- in the trees
- of the maiden
- for the father
- with the abbot
- of the trees
- with the father
- for the maidens
- the father's
- he sees the abbot

2 Identify the English meanings of each noun (look them up in the back if necessary):

(a)

superstitio, superstitionis	sun
virtus, virtutis	love
pax, pacis	mind
mens, mentis	peace
sol, solis	virtue
amor, amoris	superstition

(b)

miles, militis	soldier	ox
homo, hominis		
bos, bovis		mother
panis, panis	man	king
rex, regis		
mater, matris		bread

3 Rewrite these sentences, changing underlined words to the plural if they are singular, or to the singular if plural. Translate the new version.

- Rex in monasterio non habitat.
- Monachus bovem in silva videre potest.
- Virtutem matris laudant.
- Amicus-ne abbatis gratus est militi?

❏ O di immortales! Oh immortal gods!

### Shared endings key

-is	silvis, mulis, vinis: dat. pl. or abl. pl. 3rd declension: genitive	-e	3rd declension: ablative mule, Paule: vocative
-i	mul: nom. pl.; muli: vini: genitive 3rd declension: dative	-um	mulum: acc. vinum: nom. or acc. 3rd declension: gen. pl.
-es	3rd declension: nom. pl. or acc. pl.		

Stephanus discipulis fessis Romae historiam adhuc narrabat. 'At Romanis erant multi dei deaeque. Iuppiter deus erat caeli, Diana silvarum et venationis, Mars belli et militum, Venus amoris, Neptunus aequoris, Apollo solis et carminum. Quomodo autem possumus, ut dicit unus ex sanctis, "commemorari omnia nomina deorum et dearum?" Quis vero sapiens piusque in tot deos credere potest?'

'Liberum amo!' susurravit Augustinus.

'Quid?'

'Nihil, Magister.'

'Quid dixisti?'

'Librum amo.'

'Bene. Mox librum recitabis exscribesque. Ubi eram? ... Dei deaeque ergo in fabulis male se gerebant, et nunc nobis illae superstitiones sunt exempla turpitudinis. Neque enim virtutem laudabant neque animas hominum curabant. Deus tamen, creator terrae caelique hominumque bestiarumque, semper nos omnes curat. "Num," ut dicit sanctus Boethius, "Deus facere malum potest?" Nos sumus omnes semper carissimi Deo...'

'Magister, ecce Paulus!' Augustinus clamavit.

'... fortasse praeter Paulum. Ubi est ille delinquens?' inquit Stephanus, et ad fenestram festinavit. 'Nihil videre possum nisi boves ovesque.'

'Paulus sub arboribus cum virgine ambulat.'

'Cum virgine?' Stephanus Paulum et Luciam conspexit. 'Mehercule,' inquit, 'illa est virgo!' et statim discipuli libros reliquerunt et ad fenestram festinaverunt. 'Ad libros, o inepti, ad libros! Cibus vinumque scilicet! Paulus modo cum ancillis modo cum virgine vacat. O di immortales!'

<b>adhuc</b>	<i>still</i>
<b>aequor-is [n]</b>	<i>water, sea</i>
<b>aliquis</b>	<i>someone</i>
<b>amo</b>	<i>I love</i>
<b>amor-is [m]</b>	<i>love</i>
<b>anima-ae [f]</b>	<i>soul</i>
<b>at</b>	<i>but, yet</i>
<b>autem</b>	<i>however</i>
<b>bellum-i [n]</b>	<i>war</i>
<b>bene</b>	<i>fine</i>
<b>caelum-i [n]</b>	<i>heaven, sky</i>
<b>carissimus-a-um</b>	<i>very dear, special</i>
<b>carmen-inis [n]</b>	<i>song, poem</i>
<b>clamavit</b>	<i>(s/he) shouted</i>
<b>commemorari</b>	<i>to remember, relate</i>
<b>conspexit</b>	<i>(s/he) caught sight of</i>
<b>creator-is [m]</b>	<i>creator</i>
<b>credere</b>	<i>to believe</i>
<b>curabant [+acc.]</b>	<i>(they) cared for</i>
<b>curat [+acc.]</b>	<i>(s/he) cares for</i>
<b>dea-ae [f]</b>	<i>goddess</i>
<b>deus-i (n.pl.: di) [m]</b>	<i>god</i>
<b>di immortales</b>	<i>immortal gods</i>
<b>dicit [dixisti]</b>	<i>(s/he) says (you said)</i>
<b>ecce</b>	<i>look</i>

<b>exemplum-i [n]</b>	<i>example, proof</i>
<b>exscribes</b>	<i>you will write out</i>
<b>facere</b>	<i>to do, make</i>
<b>fenestra-ae [f]</b>	<i>window</i>
<b>festinaverunt</b>	<i>(they) hurried</i>
<b>fortasse</b>	<i>perhaps</i>
<b>homo-inis [m]</b>	<i>man</i>
<b>illa</b>	<i>that, she</i>
<b>illae</b>	<i>those</i>
<b>ille delinquens</b>	<i>that delinquent</i>
<b>Iuppiter</b>	<i>Jupiter</i>
<b>laudabant</b>	<i>(they) praised</i>
<b>liber-bri [m]</b>	<i>book</i>
<b>Liber-i [m]</b>	<i>Liber, god of wine</i>
<b>male se gerebant</b>	<i>(they) conducted themselves badly</i>
<b>mehercule!</b>	<i>well I be Hercules!</i>
<b>miles-itis [m]</b>	<i>soldier</i>
<b>modo ... modo</b>	<i>one minute ... the next</i>
<b>narrabat</b>	<i>(s/he) was recounting</i>
<b>nihil</b>	<i>nothing</i>
<b>nisi</b>	<i>except</i>
<b>nomina [acc.] [n]</b>	<i>names</i>
<b>omnia [n.pl.]</b>	<i>all</i>
<b>pius-a-um</b>	<i>pious, dutiful</i>
<b>possum (possumus)</b>	<i>I am able (we...)</i>
<b>praeter [+acc.]</b>	<i>except, besides</i>
<b>quomodo</b>	<i>how</i>
<b>recitabis</b>	<i>you will recite</i>
<b>reliquerunt</b>	<i>(they) left</i>
<b>sapiens</b>	<i>wise</i>
<b>scilicet!</b>	<i>my foot!</i>
<b>sol-is [m]</b>	<i>sun</i>
<b>sub [+abl.]</b>	<i>beneath</i>
<b>superstitio-nis [f]</b>	<i>superstition</i>
<b>susurravit</b>	<i>(s/he) whispered</i>
<b>tot</b>	<i>so many</i>
<b>turpitudine-inis [f]</b>	<i>disgraceful behaviour</i>
<b>ut</b>	<i>as</i>
<b>vacat</b>	<i>(s/he) idles</i>
<b>venatio-nis [f]</b>	<i>hunt</i>
<b>virtus-tutis [f]</b>	<i>courage, virtue</i>



## The third declension: neuter nouns **-us, -en**

Like all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative endings are the same, with the plural always **-a**. Do not confuse nouns like **mulus** with third declension neuter nouns like **tempus**. Having learned the ending **-um** to be the object ending of **-us**, you now have to recognize that **-us** may be an object ending itself! The genitive, dative and ablative endings are the same as those of other third declension nouns:

	<b>tempus</b> time	<b>carmen</b> song, poem
Singular		
Nom.	<b>tempus</b>	<b>carmen</b>
Acc.	<b>tempus</b>	<b>carmen</b>
Gen.	<b>temporis</b>	<b>carminis</b>
Dat.	<b>tempori</b>	<b>carmini</b>
Abl.	<b>tempore</b>	<b>carmine</b>
Plural		
Nom.	<b>tempora</b>	<b>carmina</b>
Acc.	<b>tempora</b>	<b>carmina</b>
Gen.	<b>temporum</b>	<b>carminum</b>
Dat.	<b>temporibus</b>	<b>carminibus</b>
Abl.	<b>temporibus</b>	<b>carminibus</b>

## Practice (ii)

1 Identify the English meanings of each noun:

<b>opus, operis</b>	<b>gift</b>	<b>body</b>
<b>nomen, nominis</b>		
<b>munus, muneris</b>	<b>work</b>	<b>name</b>
<b>corpus, corporis</b>		

2 Translate into Latin:

- the names of the abbots
- mother's gifts
- many tasks
- the bodies of the beasts
- the songs of the abbot
- (with) pleasing songs

# **Paulus cum diabolo ambulat** *Paulus walks with the devil*

73 the boy walks with the devil 07

## **Shared endings key**

-us tempus: nom. or acc.  
mulus: nom.

-a tempora, carmina: nom. or acc. pl.  
silva: nom. or abl.  
vina: nom. pl. or acc. pl.

In culina ancillae strenuae cenam magnam parant; nam hodie abbatem ex abbatum convocatione expectant. Aliae igitur potiones aliae carnem aliae panem aliae crusta aliae fruges parant. Deinde operibus fessae in horto requiescunt.

Mox Paulum et Luciam conspexerunt. 'Quis est illa? Quid est puellae nomen?' rogavit una ex ancillis.

'Filia est Comitis Karoli, nomine Lucia,' inquit alia. Nunc ancillae possunt videre abbatissam abbatemque qui Luciam salutant. Interea Benedictus culinam intravit.

'Age, tempus fugit!' clamavit coquus. 'Ubi sunt unguenta vinaque? Ubi est ignavus servus?'

'Hic est puer, Pater Benedicte, nunc Paulus adest.'

'Dico vobis, puer ille Ignavus cum diabolo ambulat .... Sancta Maria! Paulus cum abbatissa ambulat? Num abbatissa salutem dicit puero? Quid fit? Nunc puer abbati salutem dicit! Dic mihi, nam scire volo: quis est illa virgo? Est-ne puer nunc magnus et abbati amicus? Paulo gratiam et munera praebeo, sed quid ille puer Benedicto dat?'

'Ecce, nunc venit.'

'Videre est credere.'

Una ancillarum e culina ad Paulum festinavit. 'Age, Paule, Pater Benedictus sarcinas desiderat!'

Paulus 'ubi Patris Benedicti,' inquit, 'est temperantia?'

adest	(s/he) is here
age	come on!
alia	another (person)
aliae... aliae	some... others
amicus-i [m]	friend
caro, carnis [f]	flesh, meat
cena-ae [f]	dinner
comes-itis [m]	count
conspexerunt	(they) caught sight of
convocatio-nis [f]	conference
crustum-i [n]	pastry, cake
dat	(s/he) gives

diabolus-i [m]	devil
dic mihi	tell me
dico vobis	I tell you
expectant	(they) wait for
festinavit	(s/he) hurried
frux-gis [f]	fruit
fugit	(s/he/it) flees, flies
gratia-ae [f]	favour
hic	here
hortus-i [m]	garden
ille [m], illa [f]	he/she, that
interea	meanwhile
intravit	(s/he) entered
Karolus-i [m]	Charles
nam	for
panis-is [m]	bread
parant	(they) prepare
possunt	(they) are able
potio-nis [f]	drink
praebeo	I give, offer
qui	who
quid fit?	what's going on?
requiescunt	(they) relax
salutant	(they) greet
salutem dicit	(s/he) says hello
scire	to know
strenuus-a-um	energetic
temperantia-ae [f]	restraint
volo	I want

## ► Living Latin

### Di immortales *Immortal gods*

Countless stories from Greek mythology were unravelled in Latin and with them came their gods: Zeus, Aphrodite, Ares, Hephaistos and Artemis were absorbed and further embellished in Jupiter, Venus, Mars, Vulcan and Diana. These pagan gods were not only pagan, they were immoral. The stories about them were so appealing to the monks that after overcoming resistance they came to settle on monastic shelves as allegories, not heresies.

- 1 Vulcan, the god of the forge, finds his wife Venus is having a fling with Mars, the god of war. So using his skills, Vulcan sets a trap.

**Ut venere torum conlunx et adulter in unum,  
arte viri vinculisque nova ratione paratis  
in mediis ambo deprensi amplexibus haerent.  
Lemnius extemplo valvas patefecit eburnas  
inmisitque deos; illi iacuere ligati  
turpiter, atque aliquis de dis non tristibus optat  
sic fieri turpis; superi risere diuque  
haec fuit in toto notissima fabula caelo.**

(Ovid, *Metamorphoses* iv, 182-9)

*When his wife and her adulterer came together on the couch, by his skill and with the chains which he had so cleverly set up, they were both caught fast in each other's arms. Immediately the Lemnian god opened the ivory doors and let in the other gods: there the two lay in their shaming bondage – and one of the gods, who were much tickled, wished he could be so ashamed. The gods laughed, and for a long time this story went the rounds of heaven.*

- 2 In another story Venus gently brings her husband round to her way of thinking.

**Dixerat et niveis hinc atque hinc diva lacertis  
cunctantem amplexu molli fovet. Ille repente  
accepit solitam flammam, notusque medullas  
intravit calor et labefacta per ossa cucurrit.**

(Virgil, *Aeneid* viii, 387-90)

*Venus finished speaking, and slipping her snow-white arms this way and that, wraps him up in a cuddle. He hesitates. Then suddenly he felt that familiar rush and recognized the glow as it penetrated his innermost core flickering through his trembling bones.*

- 3 Lucretius, a poet-philosopher and contemporary of Cicero, had little time for the gods.

**Quippe ita formido mortalis continet omnis,  
quod multa in terris fieri caeloque tuentur  
quorum operum causas nulla ratione videre  
possunt ac fieri divino numine rentur.**

(Lucretius, *De rerum natura* i, 151-4)

*There's no question all mortals are repressed by fear: they see many phenomena on earth and in the sky which they are unable to account for with any rational explanation, so they imagine them to be the work of gods.*

# Revision

## 1 Fill the gaps:

Case	<b>corpus,</b> <b>corporis</b> [n] <i>body</i>	<b>homo,</b> <b>hominis</b> [m] <i>man, person</i>	<b>potio,</b> <b>potionis</b> [f] <i>drink</i>
Singular			
Nominative	<b>corpus</b>		
Accusative		<b>hominem</b>	
Genitive			<b>potionis</b>
Dative	<b>corpori</b>		
Ablative			
Plural			
Nominative			
Accusative	<b>corpora</b>		<b>potiones</b>
Genitive		<b>hominum</b>	
Dative			
Ablative			

## 2 Rewrite these sentences, making the underlined words plural:

- Munus discipuli dominae gratum est.
- Num magister in superstitionem credit?
- Augustinus carmen virgini recitat.
- Monachus pacem, miles bellum desiderat.

## 3 Translate into Latin:

- Who is the goddess of love? Is it Diana?
- The abbess walks with Father Benedict into the wood.
- Are the maiden's songs pleasing to the abbot?
- Why does Benedict always long for meat, bread and cakes?

## 4 Check you know these words:

abbas-atis  
amor-is  
arbor-is  
virgo-inis  
pater-tris  
mater-tris  
homo-inis

pax-cis  
corpus-oris  
tempus-oris  
opus-eris  
munus-eris,  
superstitio-nis  
carmen-inis

nomen-inis  
nihil  
interea  
nam  
age!

# 08

**nos fortunatos!**  
how lucky we are!

**In this unit you will learn about**

- **verbs: first and second conjugations**
- **and find out more about Latin authors in 'Brotherly love'**

## Present tense: *amo* / love, *amare* to love

For the different ways we express the present tense in English, see 'Verbs' on p. vii.

<i>I love (am loving /do love)</i>	<b>am-o</b>
<i>you (singular) love (are loving /do love)</i>	<b>am-as</b>
<i>s/he, it loves (is loving /does love)</i>	<b>am-at</b>
<i>we love (are loving /do love)</i>	<b>am-amus</b>
<i>you (plural) love (are loving /do love)</i>	<b>am-atis</b>
<i>they love (are loving /do love)</i>	<b>am-ant</b>

### Practice (i)

1 All these verbs belong to the first conjugation, and have endings like *amo*, *amare*. Match each one to its English meaning (look in the vocabulary section if necessary):

(a)

<b>ambulo-are</b>		<b>ask</b>
<b>desidero-are</b>	<b>greet</b>	
<b>habito-are</b>		<b>live</b>
<b>laboro-are</b>	<b>long for*</b>	
<b>paro-are</b>		<b>prepare</b>
<b>puto-are</b>	<b>think</b>	
<b>rogo-are</b>		<b>walk</b>
<b>saluto-are</b>	<b>watch</b>	
<b>specto-are</b>		<b>work</b>

(b)

<b>intro-are</b>		<b>enter</b>
<b>laudo-are</b>	<b>mutilate</b>	
<b>monstro-are</b>		<b>praise</b>
<b>mutilo-are</b>	<b>recite</b>	
<b>narro-are</b>		<b>recount/tell</b>
<b>oro-are</b>	<b>save/preserve</b>	
<b>recito-are</b>		<b>show/point out</b>
<b>servo-are</b>	<b>tolerate</b>	
<b>tolero-are</b>		<b>beg/pray</b>

(c)

<b>curo-are</b>	<b>care for/look after*</b>	
<b>damno-are</b>	<b>condemn</b>	
<b>do-are</b>		<b>eat</b>
<b>devoro-are</b>	<b>explain</b>	
<b>equito-are</b>		<b>fly</b>
<b>explico-are</b>	<b>give</b>	
<b>sto-are</b>	<b>stand</b>	<b>ride</b>
<b>susurro-are</b>		
<b>vollito-are</b>	<b>whisper</b>	

(d)

<b>aestimo-are</b>	<b>hurry</b>	<b>be empty/lidle</b>
<b>canto-are</b>		
<b>castigo-are</b>		
<b>clamo-are</b>	<b>estimate/value</b>	<b>preach</b>
<b>exspecto-are</b>	<b>punish</b>	
<b>festino-are</b>		<b>shout</b>
<b>ostento-are</b>	<b>show off*</b>	<b>sing</b>
<b>praedico-are</b>		
<b>vaco-are</b>	<b>wait for*</b>	

\* These Latin verbs take an object in the accusative even though the English has a preposition to complete the meaning: e.g. *mulum curat* *she cares for the mule*.

## 2 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- They wait for the student.
- We praise the monk.
- He is idle.
- You are working, boys.
- I am reciting a poem.
- They whisper.
- He does not ride.
- They are preparing dinner.
- She greets Augustine.
- Horses do not fly.
- The bishop is preaching.
- The cook looks after the wine.
- Why are you punishing the student, Stephen?

**Present tense: moneo / warn, monere to warn**

The endings of verbs like amare and those like monere are very similar but for the 'a' and 'e'. Amare belongs to the first conjugation, monere to the second (there are five conjugations in all, the third, fourth and fifth all being fairly similar).

I warn (am warning /do warn)	mon-eo
you (singular) warn (are warning /do warn)	mon-es
s/he, it warns (is warning /does warn)	mon-et
we warn (are warning /do warn)	mon-emus
you (plural) warn (are warning /do warn)	mon-etis
they warn (are warning /do warn)	mon-ent

**Practice (ii)**

## 1 Match each verb to its English meaning:

(a)

debeo-ere	have	grieve
doceo-ere		
doleo-ere	lie	
habeo-ere	order/tell	
laceo-ere	owe/ought	
iubeo-ere	remain/stay	
maneo-ere	teach	

(b)

respondeo-ere	hold	fear
rideo-ere		
sedeo-ere	reply	
taceo-ere	laugh/smile	see
teneo-ere	sit	
timeo-ere		be silent
video-ere		



## 2 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- (a) We sit in the field.
- (b) They fear the woods.
- (c) She is warning the maids.
- (d) Are you laughing, students?
- (e) We stay in the monastery.
- (f) Do they reply?
- (g) Are you teaching the students, Stephen?
- (h) They grieve in the church.

► **Quanti diligentiam aestimas? What value do you put on diligence?**

## Shared endings key

<b>-es</b>	3rd declension : nom. pl. or acc. pl. mones : 'you...' (s.)	<b>-as</b>	1st declension: acc. pl. (silvas) amas : 'you...' (s.)
------------	---	------------	--

'Sancti igitur,' inquit Stephanus, 'exempla nobis virtutum et pagani vitiorum monstrant. Sancti nos vitam bonam, pagani malam, docent. Carmina quidem Romana superstitionibus fabulisque deorum sunt plena; sed nonne poetae deos esse falsos putaverunt? Lucretius certe in illos non credidit et originem superstitionum sic explicat: "*Formido mortales continet omnes*". Nunc poetarum opera magni aestimamus et in monasterii bibliotheca servamus: fabulas enim sicut allegorias tolerabimus nec damnabimus. Nos fortunatos! Nunc multos carminum libros in bibliotheca habemus. Nunc ergo ad legendum .... hoc opus, hic labor est.'

'Cur tibi soli mortui poetae sunt grati, o Pater Stephane?' inquit Augustinus. 'Poeta Martialis olim dicebat: "*Nec laudas nisi mortuos poetas*".'

'Hodie, o pueri, opus non Martialis sed Vergilii recitabimus: "*Aurora Interea miseris mortalibus almam extulerat lucem referens opera atque labores* ...." Quis est ille?'

'Ignoscas, Pater Stephane.'

'Paule? Nunc ades? O male discipule! Cur lascive in silvis vacas ubi in bibliotheca adesse debes? Dolebis certe, o puer, et te castigabo.'

'Magister, erat puella in silva.'

'Ita vero.'

'Saucia erat.'

'Saucia, puto, amore.'

'Ex equo cecidit, Magister.'

'Cecidit scilicet, puer. Unde? De caelo? Equus-ne in caelo volitabat? Ut poma de arboribus sic virgines de caelo cadunt?' Alii discipuli rident.

'Magister, vera tibi dico.'

'Vera? O tempora o mores! Putas-ne studia esse nugae? Quanti diligentiam aestimas?'

'Magni, Pater Stephane, magni.'

'O Paule, magister non saevus sum, sed diligentiam te docebo. Vides-ne hunc librum?'

'Video, Magister.'

'Hodie liber est exscribendus; etiam in noctem, si necesse est, laborabis.'

'Hodie?'

<b>ad legendum</b>	<i>to (our) reading</i>
<b>agamus</b>	<i>we should do</i>
<b>alii</b>	<i>the other (pl)</i>
<b>allegoria-ae [f]</b>	<i>allegory</i>
<b>'Aurora...'</b>	<i>see Unit 1</i>
<b>cadunt</b>	<i>(they) fall</i>
<b>cecidit</b>	<i>(s/he) fell</i>
<b>certe</b>	<i>at least, of course</i>
<b>credidit</b>	<i>(s/he) believed</i>
<b>de [+abl.]</b>	<i>from, about</i>
<b>dicebat</b>	<i>(s/he) said</i>
<b>diligentia-ae [f]</b>	<i>attentiveness</i>
<b>ergo</b>	<i>so, therefore</i>
<b>exemplum-i [n]</b>	<i>example, precedent</i>
<b>exscribendus-a-um</b>	<i>to be written out</i>
<b>fabula-ae [f]</b>	<i>story</i>
<b>falsus-a-um</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>'formido...'</b>	<i>see Unit 7</i>
<b>fortunatus-a-um</b>	<i>happy, lucky</i>
<b>hoc... hic</b>	<i>this... this</i>
<b>hunc</b>	<i>this</i>
<b>in illos</b>	<i>in them</i>
<b>laborabis</b>	<i>you will work</i>
<b>labor-is [m]</b>	<i>work</i>
<b>lascive</b>	<i>wantonly</i>
<b>magni</b>	<i>much, greatly</i>
<b>mortuus-a-um</b>	<i>dead</i>
<b>nec</b>	<i>and...not</i>
<b>nugae-arum [pl.]</b>	<i>trifles, nonsense</i>
<b>o tempora o mores!</b>	<i>see Unit 1</i>
<b>olim</b>	<i>once (upon a time)</i>

origo-inis [f]	origin
paganus-i [m]	pagan
plenus-a-um [+abl.]	filled (with)
poeta-ae [m]	poet
pomum-i [n]	fruit
putaverunt	(they) thought
quanti	how much, at what value
quidem	in fact
saucius-a-um	wounded, smitten
si	if
sic	thus
sicut	just as, as if
solus-a-um	only, alone
studium-i [n]	study
tibi [dative]	(to) you
tolero-are	endure, support
unde	from where
ut	as
vita-ae [f]	life
vitium-i [n]	vice
volitabat	(s/he, it) was flying

### Future tense: *amo, amare; moneo, monere*

The future tense is expressed in English with the help of auxiliaries (*shall, will, going to*). In Latin there's only one word to cover the pronoun (*I, you, he, etc.*) and the tense itself. So, not so many words to remember, but once more the inevitable endings; at least they are the same for both verbs:

Future			
<i>I shall love</i>	<b>ama-bo</b>	<i>I shall warn</i>	<b>mone-bo</b>
<i>you (s.) will love</i>	<b>ama-bis</b>	<i>you (s.) will warn</i>	<b>mone-bis</b>
<i>s/he, it will love</i>	<b>ama-bit</b>	<i>s/he, it will warn</i>	<b>mone-bit</b>
<i>we shall love</i>	<b>ama-bimus</b>	<i>we shall warn</i>	<b>mone-bimus</b>
<i>you (pl.) will love</i>	<b>ama-bitis</b>	<i>you (pl.) will warn</i>	<b>mone-bitis</b>
<i>they will love</i>	<b>ama-bunt</b>	<i>they will warn</i>	<b>mone-bunt</b>

### Practice (iii)

1 Identify the correct endings of *canto*, *cantare* and *iaceo*, *iacere*:

(a) *Corpus in terra* \_\_\_\_



(b) *Pater Benedictus* \_\_\_\_



2 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- (a) She will warn the abbot.
- (b) Will they love the songs?
- (c) We shall praise courage.
- (d) You, boys, will sit in the garden.
- (e) Paul, will you sing to me?
- (f) We shall order the students to recite the songs.
- (g) The abbot will preach in the church.
- (h) Now you will see the bishop, Father Stephen.
- (i) We shall stay in the monastery.

▣ **Quis philosophus esse vult? Who wants to be a philosopher?**

Lucia et abbatisa et episcopus prope portam monasterii stant, ubi equos raedamque exspectant. Mox abbas e monasterio venit et eis vale dicit; deinde duo famuli viatoribus equos et raedam e stabulo ducunt. Lucia tamen ipsa non equitabit quod adhuc convalescit, sed cum abbatisa in raeda sedebit. Nunc episcopus in equum ascendit et sub arbores cum raeda equitat.

Interea in bibliotheca Paulus et Augustinus adhuc laborant; duos enim Stephanus iussit regulam monachorum per totum diem

exscribere. Nunc Augustinus e fenestra viatores monasterium relinquentes conspexit: 'Illic tua virgo monasterium relinquit. Eam-ne videre vis?'

'Num adhuc vacas, Augustine? Opus perficere debemus,' inquit Paulus.

'Scribere est lentum et difficile: "Nam vigilare leve est, pervigilare grave est", ut dicit Martialis. Ecce illa virgo: est abbati abbatissaeque amica; etiam, puto, opulenta. Et tu, Paule, scientiam an pecuniam habere vis? an amorem?'

'Sst! Nunc est scribendum.'

'Quis philosophus vel theologus esse vult? Ego volo divitias habere:

*Disputet philosophus vacuo cratere,  
sciat quia minus est scire quam habere.'*

amica-ae [f]	girlfriend
an	or
conspexit	(s/he) caught sight of
deinde	then
dicat	(s/he) says
per totum diem	all day long
difficile	difficult
disputet	let (him/her) dispute
divitiae-arum [pl.]	riches
ducunt	(they) bring
duos	two
eam	her
eis	to them
exscribere	to write out
famulus-i [m]	attendant
grave	serious
illic	over there
iussit	(s/he) told, ordered
leve	unimportant
Martialis-is	Martial
minus	less
opulentus-a-um	well-heeled, rich
pecunia-ae [f]	money
perficere	to finish
pervigilare	to lie awake all night
philosophus-i [m]	philosopher
porta-ae [f]	gate
prope [+acc.]	near
quam	than
quia	that
raeda-ae [f]	carriage

<b>regula-ae</b> [f]	<i>rule</i>
<b>relinquentes</b>	<i>leaving</i>
<b>relinquit</b>	<i>(s/he) leaves</i>
<b>sciat</b>	<i>let (him / her) know</i>
<b>scientia-ae</b> [f]	<i>knowledge</i>
<b>scribendus-a-um</b>	<i>should be written</i>
<b>stabulum-i</b> [n]	<i>stable</i>
<b>sub</b> [+acc./abl.]	<i>under</i>
<b>theologus-i</b> [m]	<i>theologian</i>
<b>tuus-a-um</b>	<i>your</i>
<b>ut</b>	<i>as</i>
<b>vacuo cratere</b>	<i>with an empty bowl</i>
<b>vale dicit</b>	<i>(s/he) says goodbye</i>
<b>vel</b>	<i>or</i>
<b>viator-is</b> [m]	<i>traveller</i>
<b>vigilare</b>	<i>to lie awake</i>
<b>vis</b>	<i>you want</i>

## ► Living Latin

### Brotherly love

- 1 The 'republic' of ancient Rome was an oligarchy of aristocrats tempered by public elections of questionable influence. From time to time ambitious individuals upset the balance of this oligarchy, only for it to be restored by a concession or something underhand. However, in the first century BC, Julius Caesar and Octavian each gained supreme power having survived the efforts of Pompey to oppose one, and Mark Antony the other. Octavian defeated Antony (and Cleopatra) at the battle of Actium in 32 BC, and consolidated his authority, taking the name 'Augustus'. He was succeeded by Tiberius, Tiberius by Caligula, Caligula by Claudius, and Claudius by Nero, and so a dynasty of emperors was created.

Under the emperors the facade of republican government continued with elections, consulships and meetings of the senate, but a revolution of power had occurred, from oligarchy of nobles to an absolute ruler influenced by counsellors and favourites. Political rivalries within the republic had seldom been resolved without bloodshed, and although the absolute power of an emperor may not have pleased what was left of the old republican nobility, many less influential people will have welcomed the security and safety which a single authority brought.

Even the murder of Nero's step-brother, Britannicus, failed to excite much reaction beyond the walls of the dining-room where he was poisoned:

(Nero) ut erat reclinis et nescio similis solitum ita ait per comitalem morbum quo prima ab infantia adflicaretur Britannicus, et redituros paulatim visus sensusque. Ita post breve silentium repetita convivii laetitia. Nox eadem necem Britannici et rogam contunxit, proviso ante funebri paratu, qui modicus fuit. In campo tamen Martis sepultus est adeo turbidis imbris, ut vulgus iram deum portendi crediderit adversus facinus cui plerique etiam hominum ignoscebant, antiquas fratrum discordias et insociabile regnum aestimantes.

(Tacitus, Annals xlii, 16–17)

*Nero just lay there feigning ignorance, and remarked that Britannicus had suffered from epilepsy since childhood and this was one of the symptoms; little by little, he told them, Britannicus would recover his sight and senses. And so, after a brief silence, the jollity of dinner was resumed. Britannicus meanwhile was buried the same night, since arrangements for the funeral – a rather modest one – had been taken care of. He was buried in the Field of Mars amid such a violent rainstorm that ordinary folk believed it to be a sign of the gods' anger. Most people condoned the murder, putting it down to age-old feuds of brothers and a power which could not be shared.*

- 2 Worldly politics seem very distant to the poet Martial, who lived during Nero's reign. His problems start with his neighbour – a teacher:

**Vicini somnum non tota nocte rogamus:  
nam vigilare leve est, pervigilare grave est.  
Discipulos dimitte tuos. Vis, garrule, quantum  
accipis ut clames, accipere ut taceas?**

(Martial, Epigrams ix, 68, 9–12)

*We neighbours do not ask for sleep all night long: some loss of sleep is neither here nor there, but to lie awake the whole night is no joke. Dismiss your students. Tell me, you chatterbox, do you want to earn as much as you are paid to make your din – just to keep quiet?*

- 3 Virgil, Horace and other poets were considered 'classics' almost while they were still alive. The 'dead poets' society' is something Martial is not quite ready to join:

**Miraris veteres, Vacerra, solos  
nec laudas nisi mortuos poetas.  
Ignoscas petimus, Vacerra: tanti  
non est, ut placeam tibi, perire.**

(Martial, Epigrams viii, 69)

*You like only the ancient poets, Vacerra, and give no acclaim  
unless they are dead. Pray forgive me, Vacerra, but I don't wish to  
die just to keep you happy.*

## Revision

1 Change the underlined verbs into the future tense and translate:

- (a) Equi in caelo volitant.
- (b) In ecclesia sedeo.
- (c) Discipulos somnulentos castigant.
- (d) Lucia mihi in ecclesia susurrat.

2 Change the underlined verbs into the present tense and translate:

- (a) O Domina, cur dolebis?
- (b) Philosophiam te docbo, o Paule.
- (c) Labores in agris non tolerabimus.
- (d) Nonne, o Virgo, Augustinum amabis?

3 Fill the gaps:

Case	munus [n] muneris gift	labor [m] laboris toil	allegoria [f] allegoriae allegory	deus [m] dei god
	Singular			
Nominative		labor	allegoria	deus
Accusative				deum
Genitive		laboris		
Dative			allegoriae	
Ablative	munere			
	Plural			
Nominative			allegoriae	dei (di)
Accusative	munera			
Genitive		laborum		
Dative				
Ablative				



## 4 Translate into Latin:

- (a) The abbess will prepare a large dinner.
- (b) Are the students still working in the library?
- (c) What are you whispering, Lucia?
- (d) They will grieve in the church.

## 5 Check you know these words:

susurro-are

recito-are

do-dare

doceo-ere

rideo-ere

ut

olim

labor-is

minus

curo-are

oro-are

debeo-ere

video-ere

si

sicut

deinde

studium-i

paro-are

canto-are

habeo-ere

timeo-ere

nisi

ergo

fabula-ae

pecunia-ae

# 09

## quis in silva ululat?

who is howling in the wood?

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- adjectives like *omnis*
- verbal adjectives: *-ndus*,  
*-nda*, *-ndum* (gerundives)
- and find out more about  
Latin authors in 'Speculator  
amicae'

## Third declension adjectives

Adjectives like *sanctus* have endings identical to the nouns *mulus*, *silva* and *vinum*, and agree with the noun they qualify. A noun and adjective in agreement may have matching endings, e.g. *mulus bonus* *a good mule*, but not always so, e.g. *virgo laeta* *a cheerful maiden*, or *magnum opus* *a great work*.

There are some adjectives which do not have endings like *sanctus*, but are similar to third declension nouns. The ablative usually ends -i, and the neuter singular -e, otherwise they are identical to the third declension. There is no difference between masculine and feminine forms:

Case	omnis all, every	
	Masc./Fem.	Neuter
	Singular	
Nominative (+voc.)	omn-is	omn-e
Accusative	omn-em	omn-e
Genitive	omn-is	
Dative	omn-i	
Ablative	omn-i	
	Plural	
Nominative	omn-es	omn-ia
Accusative	omn-es	omn-ia
Genitive	omn-ium	
Dative	omn-ibus	
Ablative	omn-ibus	

## Practice (i)

1 Match the Latin and English adjectives:

(a)

brevis	disgraceful	brief
facilis		
fortis		serious
gravis	soft	
humilis		easy
levis	humble	
mollis		trivial
nobilis	brave	
turpis		noble

(b)

crudelis		slender
difficilis	sweet	
gracilis		cruel
mirabilis	terrible	
terribilis		sad
tristis	useful	
utilis		marvellous
dulcis	difficult	
fidelis		faithful

## 2 Translate into Latin:

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) (with) all the students | (e) a disgraceful superstition |
| (b) a brief song            | (f) a soft tunic               |
| (c) difficult tasks         | (g) for the brave soldiers     |
| (d) of humble monks         | (h) a sweet mistress           |

### ❑ Regula monachorum *The rule of the monks*

Augustinus de Lucia adhuc cogitat: 'Tua amica monasterium reliquit, et ex oculis evanuit,' Paulo inquit Augustinus.

'Illa non amica est mea.'

'Non tua vero? Bene. Ego virginem salutabo. Quis scit? Fortes Fortuna adiuvat, ut dicunt poetae.'

'O satis poetarum, Augustine; opus perficere debes.'

'Dulcis amica, tu es mirabilis, et me Cupido inflammat amore. Carmina tibi, Lucia, dedicabo ... vel hoc Propertii: *Dum nos fata sinunt oculos satiemus amore*. Vel hoc Catulli: *Vivamus mea Lucia atque amemus*.'

'Satis carminum, amice! Nunc exscribendum, si tibi placet, silentio.'

'Ignoscas si tibi sum molestus,' inquit Augustinus, et librum spectat. Omnes paginae sunt abbatum monachorumque regulis plenae. Stephanus discipulos duos monachorum regulas exscribere iusserat omnes. 'Num totum librum exscribere debeo?' rogavit Augustinus.

'Ita vero,' respondit Paulus, et Augustinus tandem scribere incipit:  
*I... Dominum Deum diligere. II... Non occidere. III... Non adulterare. IV... Non facere furtum. V... Mortuum sepellire. VI... Iniuriam non facere. VII... Inimicos diligere. VIII... Non falsum testimonium dicere. IX... Nudum vestire. X... Infirum visitare. XI... Non esse superbum. XII... Invidiam non exercere. XIII... Castitatem amare. XIV... Non esse vinolentum...* 'Io Benedictel' et cantat: *'Bibat ille, bibat illa, bibat servus et ancilla.'*

adiuvat	(s/he) helps
amemus	let us love
bibat	let [him/her] drink
castitas-tatis [f]	chastity
Catullus-i	Catullus
cogito-are	think
Cupido-inis	Cupid
diligere	to love
dum	while, as long as

evanuit	(s/he) has vanished
fatum-i [n]	fate
furtum-i [n]	theft
hoc	this
incipit	(s/he) begins
infirmus-a-um	sick
inflammo-are	inflamm
inimicus-i [m]	enemy
iniuria-ae [f]	harm
invidia-ae [f]	grudge, jealousy
iusserat	(s/he) had ordered
meus-a-um	my
molestus-a-um	troublesome
occidere	to kill
oculus-i [m]	eye
pagina-ae [f]	page
placeo-ere	please
Propertius-i	Propertius
reliquit	(s/he) has left
rogavit	(s/he) asked
satiemus	let us fill
satis	enough
scit	(s/he) knows
sepelire	to bury
silentium-i [n]	silence
sinunt	(they) allow
superbus-a-um	proud
tandem	at last
tu [nom.]	you
tuus-a-um	your
vestire	to clothe
vinolentus-a-um	fond of booze
vivamus	let us live

### Adjectives ending **-ndus, -nda, -ndum**

The girl's name 'Amanda' comes from the Latin for 'to-be-loved':

Virgo amanda

*a girl to be loved*

Amandus-a-um is an adjective with the same endings as sanctus-a-um. It is formed from a verb (amo, amare) but behaves exactly like an adjective, agreeing with its noun in number, case and gender. It is called a 'gerundive', and usually carries a sense of obligation ('should', 'ought', 'must'):

Virgo amanda est.

*The girl is to be loved  
(ought to be loved).*

Stephanus monendus est.

*Stephen is to be warned  
(should be warned).*

A gerundive is always **passive**. This means the subject is 'done to', not the 'doer' (i.e. in the examples above, **virgo** is loved, not doing the loving, and **Stephanus** is to be warned, not doing the warning).

The first conjugation (-are verbs) end -andus, all the remainder -endus:

amandus-a-um  
monendus-a-um  
agendus-a-um, etc.

## Practice (ii)

1 Match the Latin phrases to their English meanings:

*a monk to be praised; a maid to be admired; an abbess to be revered; an abbot to be revered; gifts to be distributed; a song not to be heard; tasks to be done; words to be added*

carmen non audiendum  
abbatissa reverenda  
opera agenda  
monachus laudandus  
munera dividenda  
verba addenda  
abbas reverendus  
ancilla miranda

2 Identify the correct form of the gerundive, and translate:

e.g. Ancilla (laudo, laudare, laudandus-a-um) est.

Ancilla laudanda est. *The maid should be praised.*



(a) Abbas (audio, audire  
audiendus-a-um) est.

(b) *Milites non (amo, amare, amandus-a-um) sunt.*



(c) *Opus (perficio, perficere, perficiendus-a-um) est.*

## ► Ohe, libelle! Whoa, little book!

Nunc Paulus opere perfecto abiit, sed Augustinus adhuc scribit:

*... XXVII... diem ludicii timere. XXVIII... veritatem ex corde et ore proferre. XXIX... nihil amoris Christi praeponere. XXX... honorare omnes homines. XXXI... dolum in corde non tenere. XXXII... contentionem non amare... '...scribere est difficile,' inquit, et carmen Martialis murmurat: 'Ohe, iam satis est, ohe, libelle,' nec multo post obdormit.*

'Eho! Ubi est regula?' clamat Stephanus, 'Dormis-ne, Augustine?' et e somno Augustinum excitat.

'Regula? Immo, o Domine, non dormio.'

'Nunc regula est perficienda!'

'Ita vero Pater Stephane. Cogitabam de regulis.'

'Cogitabas an dormiebas?'

'Ignoscas, Domine. Ego fessus sum.' Subito Stephanus et Augustinus horrendum clamorem audiunt. Unus ex monachis in monasterio magna voce ululare incipit.

'Quis est ille? Audivisti-ne?' Stephanus ad fenestram festinavit. 'Illic Theodorus e silva currit. Cur Theodorus territus est?' et Stephanus celeriter bibliothecam relinquit.

ablit	(s/he) went away
audivisti	you heard
clamor-is [m]	shout, cry
cogitabam, cogitabas	I was thinking, you ...
contentio-nis [f]	dispute, competition
cor-dis [n]	heart
currit	(s/he) runs
de [+abl.]	about
dolus-i [m]	deceit
dormiebas	you were sleeping
dormio, dormis	I am sleeping, you ...
excito-are	wake, arouse
honoro-are	honour
horrendus-a-um	fearful, to be feared
iam	now, already
immo	no, on the contrary
iudicium-i [n]	trial, judgment
libellus-i [m]	little book
murmuro-are	murmur
nec multo post	not long afterwards
obdormit	(s/he) falls asleep
ohe	whoa
opere perfecto	with the task completed
os, oris [n]	mouth
praeponere	to prefer
proferre	to put forward
scribit	(s/he) writes
somnus-i [m]	sleep
ululo-are	howl
veritas-tatis [f]	truth
vox, vocis [f]	voice

## ► Living Latin

### **Speculator amicae** *One who spies on his mistress*

The earliest erotic poetry which has survived is the work of Catullus, whose ill-starred passion for Lesbia fills his lyrics with hungry love mixed with bitter reproaches. Then we have the impassioned seriousness of Propertius, whose rough and tumble with Cynthia delighted the men and women of ancient Rome; so



too the elegies of his contemporary Tibullus, whose yearning submission to his mistress makes him as loving as any of the poets. Last, and possibly most popular of all, comes Ovid: his sometimes frivolous and leering wit disguises a poet who was, he tells us, happily married and unpromiscuous.

1 Propertius spies on his mistress:

Mane erat, et volui, si sola quiesceret illa,  
visere: at in lecto Cynthia sola fuit.  
Obstupui: non illa mihi formosior umquam  
visa, neque ostrina cum fuit in tunica,  
ibat et hinc castae narratum somnia Vestae,  
neu sibi neve mihi quae noctura forent:  
talīs visa mihi somno dimissa recenti.  
Heu quantum per se candida forma valet!  
'Quid? tu matutinus,' ait, 'speculator amicae?  
Me similem vestris moribus esse putas?  
Non ego tam facilis: sat erit mihi cognitus unus,  
vel tu vel si quis verior esse potest.  
Apparent non ulla toro vestigia presso,  
signa volutantis nec iacuisse duos.  
Aspice ut in toto nullus mihi corpore surgat  
spiritus admisso notus adulterio.'  
Dixit, et opposita propellens savia dextra  
prosilīit in laxa nixa pedem solea.  
Sic ego tam sancti custos retrudor amoris:  
ex illo felix nox mihi nulla fuit.

(Elegies ii, 29B)

*It was early, and I desired to see her, to see if she slept alone: but there was Cynthia by herself in bed. I was taken aback: never has she looked more stunning, not even when she went in her purple gear to chaste Vesta to report her dreams, in case they might bring harm to her or me: this is how she looked freshly arisen from sleep. What power such natural beauty holds!*

*'Oh?' she says, 'do you lark about spying on your mistress? Do you judge me by your standards? I'm not so free and easy: one lover is plenty, yourself maybe, or another if there's one more true. You'll find no trace of rough and tumble in this bed, no sign of a couple's frolicsome contortions. See for yourself: my body is quite calm without the adulterer's breathless panting flagrante delicto.'* With that, she waved away my lunging kisses, slipped into loose sandals and was gone. Thus am I, the guardian of so heavenly a love, rejected: since then I've not had a single happy night.

## 2 Catullus reflects on his girl's faithlessness:

Nulli se dicit mulier mea nubere malle  
quam mihi, non si se Iuppiter ipse petat.  
Dicit: sed mulier cupido quod dicit amanti,  
in vento et rapida scribere oportet aqua.

(Poems lxx)

*My girl says she wants to marry no one other than me. Not even if Jupiter himself should ask. That's what she says. But what a girl says to an eager lad is best inscribed in the breeze and swift-flowing streams.*

## 3 The piece below is part of a letter written in the twelfth century by Héloïse to her former tutor, lover, and husband, Abelard. Her uncle had taken violent and cruel exception to their match (Abelard was castrated), and Héloïse lived the remainder of her life in a nunnery.

\*Missam ad amicum pro consolatione epistolam, dilectissime, vestram ad me forte quidam nuper attulit. Quam ex ipsa statim tituli fronte vestram esse considerans, tanto ardentius eam coepi legere, quanto scriptorem ipsum charius amplector, ut cuius rem perdidit, verbis saltem tanquam eius quadam imagine recreer.

(From *Mediaeval Latin*, ed. K.P. Harrington,  
University of Chicago Press, 1997)

*Dearest, a letter you sent to a friend pouring out your feelings happened recently to fall into my hands. I knew it was yours the moment I saw your writing on the envelope, and a desire to read it seized me, much as I desire to have its author in my arms. I may not have him in person, but at least his words give some sort of picture to refresh me.*

\*post-classical

## Revision

## 1 Rewrite these sentences, changing underlined words to the plural, if they are singular, or to the singular if plural. Translate the new version.

- (a) Magna cena in culina paranda est.
- (b) Dulces dominae semper audiendae sunt.
- (c) Turpis discipulus excitandus est.
- (d) Humiles servi etiam laudandi sunt.
- (e) Cur abbates reverendi sunt?

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) We will dedicate the song to the brave soldiers and the humble maid.
- (b) I grieve, because Lucia will inflame me with love but will not love me.
- (c) Now the girl will sing a sweet song, and the boys will relate the history of the monastery.

3 Write out all the endings, singular and plural, masculine, feminine and neuter of (a) *dulcis* (b) *agendus*.

4 Check you know these words:

*omnis*  
*gravis*  
*tristis*  
*somnus-i*

*brevis*  
*turpis*  
*dulcis*  
*tandem*

*facilis*  
*mirabilis*  
*oculus-i*

# 10

## **lacrimae in monasterio** tears in the monastery

**In this unit you will learn about**

- **third, fourth and mixed conjugations**
- **irregular verbs: sum, possum, volo**
- **and find out more about Latin authors in 'Miserable corpus'**

## Present tense: third, fourth and mixed conjugations

The third and fourth conjugations are quite similar. A 'mixed' conjugation which shares endings with both the third and fourth conjugations only has a few verbs, though these are frequently used (e.g. *capio*, *capere* and compounds, *recipio*, *accipio*, etc.; and *facio*, *facere* and compounds, *perfacio*, etc.).

	third mitt- <i>ere</i> to send	fourth aud- <i>ire</i> to hear	mixed cap- <i>ere</i> to take, capture
<i>I</i>	mitt-o	aud- <i>io</i>	cap- <i>io</i>
<i>you (s.)</i>	mitt- <i>is</i>	aud- <i>is</i>	cap- <i>is</i>
<i>s/he, it</i>	mitt- <i>it</i>	aud- <i>it</i>	cap- <i>it</i>
<i>we</i>	mitt- <i>imus</i>	aud- <i>imus</i>	cap- <i>imus</i>
<i>you (pl.)</i>	mitt- <i>itis</i>	aud- <i>itis</i>	cap- <i>itis</i>
<i>they</i>	mitt- <i>unt</i>	aud- <i>unt</i>	cap- <i>unt</i>

### Practice (i)

1 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- She sends a gift.
- We capture the soldier.
- They hear a song.
- I capture the beast.
- They send a book.
- You are hearing the abbot, students.
- We send money.
- Do you hear Paul, Augustine?

2 Match each verb to its English meaning (look them up if necessary):

(a)

third conjugation:		
curro- <i>ere</i>	write	leave
dico- <i>ere</i>		
duco- <i>ere</i>	lead	say
lego- <i>ere</i>		
rego- <i>ere</i>	rule	read
relinquo- <i>ere</i>		
scribo- <i>ere</i>	run	

(b)

third conjugation:		
ascendo- <i>ere</i>	climb	live
credo- <i>ere</i>		believe
bibo- <i>ere</i>	drink	
cado- <i>ere</i>		fall
emo- <i>ere</i>		
ago- <i>ere</i>	buy	
vivo- <i>ere</i>		do

(c)

fourth conjugation:

venio-ire	bury	know
dormio-ire		
scio-ire		open
sentio-ire	sleep	
sepelio-ire		come
aperio-ire	feel	

(d)

mixed conjugation:

facio-ere	flee	make
fugio-ere		
incipio-ere	complete	
perficio-ere	regain/accept	
recipio-ere		begin

101

tears in the monastery

10

3 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- I am reading Augustine's book.
- Are they running into the church?
- The abbot writes all the rules.
- We are beginning to live!
- Are they burying a monk?
- Why are they fleeing from the monastery?
- Are you drinking wine in the kitchen, maids?
- Who is coming?
- They do not hear the abbess.

## ► Miserabile corpus *The pitiable corpse*

### Shared endings key

-is silvis, mulis, vinis: dat. pl. or abl. pl.  
3rd declension: genitive  
mitti(t)is, audi(t)is, capi(t)is: 'you...'

-o mulo: dat. or abl.  
all verbs: 'I...'

Post Theodori mortem – fortuitam, ut dicit abbas, sed quis potest scire? – multae erant lacrimae. Theodorus enim fuerat monachus pius et omnibus amicus. Timor autem per monasterium agrosque vulgatus est. Monachi multos dies erant pavidī tacitique.

Nunc in schola discipulis pauca verba de Theodori morte Stephanus dicit. Postea magister tristis e Vulgato legit:

*'Hoc autem dico, fratres, quoniam caro et sanguis regnum Dei possidere non possunt ...'*

Paulus per fenestram spectat et mortem Theodori contemplet. Quis eum occidere voluisset? Fuerat amicus omnibus, vir pius et humilis. Erat rumor. Dani? Num Dani Theodorum trucidaverunt? Dani in regione iam viginti annos non visi erant.

*...Ubi est, mors, victoria tua? Ubi est, mors, stimulus tuus?'*

Stephanus campanam per monasterium resonantem audit et legere desinit. 'Nunc corpus Theodori sepeliemus, o pueri,' inquit, 'et vos unam horam sine me laborabitis et opera perficietis,' et per genas lacrimas fundens bibliothecam relinquit.

<b>annus-i</b> [m]	<i>year</i>
<b>campana-ae</b> [f]	<i>bell</i>
<b>caro, carnis</b> [f]	<i>flesh</i>
<b>Danus-i</b> [m]	<i>Dane, Viking</i>
<b>desino-ere</b>	<i>leave off, abandon</i>
<b>dies</b> [nom./acc.]	<i>days</i>
<b>fortuitus-a-um</b>	<i>accidental</i>
<b>frater-tris</b> [m]	<i>brother</i>
<b>fuera</b> t	<i>(s/he) had been</i>
<b>fundens</b>	<i>pouring</i>
<b>genae-arum</b> [f]	<i>cheeks</i>
<b>hora-ae</b> [f]	<i>hour</i>
<b>lacrima-ae</b> [f]	<i>tear</i>
<b>mors, mortis</b> [f]	<i>death</i>
<b>paucus-a-um</b>	<i>few</i>
<b>pavidus-a-um</b>	<i>fearful</i>
<b>possideo-ere</b>	<i>occupy</i>
<b>post</b> [+acc.]	<i>after</i>
<b>postea</b>	<i>afterwards</i>
<b>quoniam</b>	<i>since</i>
<b>regio-nis</b> [f]	<i>region</i>
<b>regnum-i</b> [n]	<i>kingdom</i>
<b>resonantem</b>	<i>resounding</i>
<b>rumor-is</b> [m]	<i>rumour, gossip</i>
<b>sanguis-inis</b> [m]	<i>blood</i>
<b>sine</b> [+abl.]	<i>without</i>
<b>stimulus-i</b> [m]	<i>sting</i>
<b>tacitus-a-um</b>	<i>silent, quiet</i>
<b>timor-is</b> [m]	<i>fear</i>
<b>trucidaverunt</b>	<i>(they) murdered</i>
<b>tuus-a-um</b>	<i>your</i>
<b>unus-a-um</b>	<i>one</i>
<b>verbum-i</b> [n]	<i>word</i>
<b>victoria-ae</b> [f]	<i>victory</i>
<b>viginti</b>	<i>twenty</i>
<b>vir-i</b> [m]	<i>man</i>
<b>visi erant</b>	<i>(they) had been seen</i>
<b>voluisset</b>	<i>had wanted</i>
<b>Vulgatum-i</b> [n]	<i>the Vulgate</i>
<b>vulgatus est</b>	<i>was spread abroad</i>

## Accusative of duration

The accusative case is used to express a length of time. Thus above we have *multos dies* for *many days*, *viginti annos* for *twenty years* and *unam horam* for *one hour*. Most numbers have fixed endings, like *viginti*; a few have endings which change (e.g. *unus, una, unum; duo, duae; tres, tria*).

## Future tense: third, fourth and mixed conjugations

The future of the first two conjugations have the endings -bo, -bis, -bit, etc. The third, fourth and mixed are different, all sharing the letter e in the ending:

	mitt-ere to send	aud-ire to hear	cap-ere to take, capture
I	mitt-am	audi-am	capi-am
you (s.)	mitt-es	audi-es	capi-es
s/he, it	mitt-et	audi-et	capi-et
we	mitt-emus	audi-emus	capi-emus
you (pl.)	mitt-etis	audi-etis	capi-etis
they	mitt-ent	audi-ent	capi-ent

## Irregular verbs: *sum, possum, volo*

It is one of the laws of language that rules and regular forms have exceptions. Irregular verbs are amongst the most commonly used:

	esse to be	posse to be able	velle to want
		Present	
I	sum	possum	volo
you (s.)	es	potes	vis
s/he, it	est	potest	vult
we	sumus	possumus	volumus
you (pl.)	estis	potestis	vultis
they	sunt	possunt	volunt
		Future	
I	ero	potero	volam
you (s.)	eris	poteris	voles
s/he, it	erit	poterit	volet
we	erimus	poterimus	volemus
you (pl.)	eritis	poteritis	voletis
they	erunt	poterunt	volent

The compound forms of *esse* (*abesse, adesse*) share the same irregular endings.



## Practice (ii)

1 Translate the underlined verbs into Latin:

- She will send a gift.
- We shall capture the beasts.
- They will hear a song.
- She is sitting in the church.
- Will you hear the abbot, students?
- They will be able to see us.
- Do you want to come, Paul?
- We shall be present in the monastery today.

## How to recognize a conjugation

Conjugation	first person	infinitive	How to recognize the conjugation
first	am-o	am-are	<i>the infinitive ending -are</i>
second	mon-eo	mon-ere	<i>the infinitive -ere, and the e in the present</i>
third	mitt-o	mitt-ere	<i>same infinitive as monere but no e in the present</i>
fourth	aud-io	aud-ire	<i>the i in the present, with infinitive -ire</i>
mixed	cap-io	cap-ere	<i>the i in the present, with infinitive -ere</i>

## Practice (iii)

1 To which conjugation do the following verbs belong?

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (a) aperio-ire  | (g) bibo-ere     |
| (b) oro-are     | (h) scio-ire     |
| (c) incipio-ere | (i) perficio-ere |
| (d) dico-ere    | (j) video-ere    |
| (e) satio-are   | (k) laudo-are    |
| (f) retineo-ere | (l) vivo-ere     |

## ❏ Hic iacet Theodorus Here lies Theodorus

'Miserum Theodorum,' inquit Paulus, per fenestram exsequias Theodori spectans. Pluit; monachi miserabile corpus Theodori ex ecclesia portant et abbas exiguam pompam ducit.

Discipuli libros relinquunt et per fenestram pompam spectant. 'Ecce, Theodorum sepelient sub arborem ubi nobis fabulas narrabat,' inquit unus. 'Cur omnes monachi non adsunt? Cur eum tam cito sepeliunt?' rogavit alter. 'Quis Theodorum occidit?' rogavit tertius.

'Quis scit?' respondit Paulus.

'Quando sciemus?' rogavit Augustinus.

'Abbas proxima nocte eum vidit,' inquit Paulus. 'Fortasse Stephano dicet.'

*'Solea occidere et redire possunt. Nobis cum semel occidit brevis lux, Nox est perpetua una dormienda,'* murmurat Augustinus, e Catulli libello recitans.

'O miserum Theodorum!' inquit Paulus. Ecce, nunc corpus in terram demittunt.' Nunc aliquis flere incipit.

Mox abbas et monachi in ecclesiam reveniunt praeter Stephanum qui prope sepulcrum orat. Adhuc pluit; mox vocem Stephani iterum iterumque gementem audiunt.

HIC IACET THEODORUS

MONASTERII HUTUS

MONACHUS QUI IN

ANNO VICESIMO ET

QUINTO MORTUUS

NUNC CUM DEO IN

PACE REQUIESCIT

aliquis	someone
alter	another
cum semel	as soon as
demitto-ere	lower
eum	him
exiguus-a-um	slender, scant
exsequiae-arum	funeral
fleo-ere	weep
gementem	groaning
hulus	of this
iterum	again
libellus-i [m]	book
lux-cis [f]	light, life
miserabilis-e	pitiable
murmuro-are	murmur
nox, noctis [f]	night
occidit	(s)he kills/killed or falls/fell
occido-ere	fall
occido-ere	kill
perpetuus-a-um	unending
pluit	it is raining
pompa-ae [f]	procession
praeter [+acc.]	except, besides
proximus-a-um	nearest, previous
quando	when
redeo-ire [irreg.]	return

rogavit	(s/he) asked
sepulcrum-i [n]	grave
sol-is [m]	sun, day
spectans	watching
tam cito	so quickly
tertius-a-um	third
vicesimo et quinto	in the twenty-fifth

## ► Living Latin

### Miserabile corpus *The pitiable corpse*

- 1 The Aeneid of Virgil is regarded by many as the Latin poem with the most breadth and range, reaching all corners of the soul with moments of love, friendship, loyalty, suffering, fulfilment and despair. In this scene below, the Trojans bring the corpse of Pallas back to his father, Evander:

At non Evandrum potis est vis ulla tenere,  
sed venit in medios. Feretro Pallanta reposito  
procubuit super atque haeret lacrimansque gemensque,  
et via vix tandem vocis laxata dolore est:  
'Non haec, o Palla, dederas promissa parenti,  
cautius ut saevo velles te credere Marti.  
Haud ignarus eram quantum nova gloria in armis  
et praedulce decus primo certamine posset.  
Primitiae iuvenis miserae bellique propinqui  
dura rudimenta, et nulli exaudita deorum  
vota precesque meae!'

(Virgil, Aeneid xi, 148–58)

*Nothing could restrain Evander who came out into the middle of the throng. The bier was put down and he knelt over Pallas. He clung to him, and wept and groaned, and hoarse with grief could barely speak:*

*'O Pallas, are these the promises you gave your father, that you take care of yourself in the savage fighting? I was all too aware of the lure of honour in a man's first battle, and the first sweet taste of glory in untried combat. What a wretched coming-of-age, what a cruel start to a war so close to home. Not one of the gods listened to my prayers or vows!'*

## 2 Life is short, so let's make it sweet, says Catullus:

Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amemus,  
 rumoresque senum severiorum  
 omnes unus aestimemus assis.  
 Soles occidere et redire possunt:  
 nobis cum semel occidit brevis lux,  
 nox est perpetua una dormienda.  
 Da mi basia mille, deinde centum,  
 dein mille altera, dein secunda centum,  
 deinde usque altera mille, deinde centum.

(Poems v, 1–9)

*Come my Lesbia, let's live, let's love, and never mind the chatter of old frowning bores – they're not worth tuppence. The sun may go down and return, but for us when our brief peep of light goes out, a single night awaits of unbroken sleep. So give me a thousand kisses, then a hundred, then I'll take another thousand, and another hundred, and then yet another thousand, and one more hundred.*

## Revision

### 1 Change the underlined verbs to the future tense, and translate:

- (a) Monachus mulum in silvam ducit.
- (b) Hodie discipuli labores perficiunt.
- (c) Monasterium-ne relinquimus?
- (d) Augustinum audire non possum.

### 2 Change the underlined verbs to the present tense, and translate:

- (a) In superstitiones non credam.
- (b) Me amica inflammabit amore.
- (c) Carmina-ne Augustini audies?
- (d) Discipuli e Vulgato legent.

### 3 Translate into Latin:

- (a) The maids always want to hear Augustine's songs!
- (b) Lucia is already able to read, sing and work in the fields.
- (c) We shall care for the souls of both humble serfs and great kings.
- (d) Why are the monks fleeing out of the wood?

- 4 Write out these nouns, all cases, singular and plural: opus, operis; nox, noctis (gen.pl.: noctium); fabula, fabulae; sepulcrum, sepulcri; annus, anni.
- 5 Check you know these words:

dico-ere  
scribo-ere  
ago-ere  
bibo-ere  
regnum-i

facio-ere  
duco-ere  
vivo-ere  
mors-tis  
iterum

scio-ire  
credo-ere  
incipio-ere  
verbum-i



# **libera nos a malo**

**deliver us from evil**

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- **imperfect tense**
- **adjectives: -ens**
- **present participles**
- **and find out more about  
Latin in 'Yaysoos in chaylo'**

## Past tense: imperfect

The present tense describes this moment or current period, the future tense is for a future event, and all the remaining tenses are past ones. The imperfect tense describes a past event which was habitual, recurrent or lasting for a while. The name 'imperfect' means unfinished:

Discipuli ante cenam in  
ecclesia cantabant sed  
Augustinus carmina  
legebat.

*Before dinner the students used  
to sing/were singing in the  
church, but Augustine would  
read/was reading his poetry.*

There are different ways to express this tense in English: 'used to sing', 'were singing', 'was reading' and 'would read' may all be used to represent the imperfect. A simple past might do as well, as in 'Every day the students sang in the church'.

The endings of this tense are common to all verbs:

	am-are love	mon-ere warn, advise	mitt-ere send
I	ama-bam	mone-bam	mitte-bam
you (s.)	ama-bas	mone-bas	mitte-bas
s/he, it	ama-bat	mone-bat	mitte-bat
we	ama-bamus	mone-bamus	mitte-bamus
you (pl.)	ama-batis	mone-batis	mitte-batis
they	ama-bant	mone-bant	mitte-bant
	aud-ire hear	cap-ere take, capture	
I	audie-bam	capie-bam	
you (s.)	audie-bas	capie-bas	
s/he, it	audie-bat	capie-bat	
we	audie-bamus	capie-bamus	
you (pl.)	audie-batis	capie-batis	
they	audie-bant	capie-bant	

Exceptions are *sum*, *esse* (and compounds: *adsum*, *absum*, *possum*):

I was	eram	I was able/could	poteram
you (s.) were	eras	you (s.) were able/could	poteras
s/he, it was	erat	s/he, it was able/could	poterat
we were	eramus	we were able/could	poteramus
you (pl.) were	eratis	you (pl.) were able/could	poteratis
they were	erant	they were able/could	poterant

Nec multo post Theodori exsequias, multi in ecclesia aderant. Ecclesia candelis incensique fragrantia plena erat. Abbas ipse cum monachis missam celebrabat. Lucia iuxta matrem in primis subselliis inter magnas familias sedebat. Post nobiles erant peregrini et agricolae et pueri et ancillae et servi. Abbas ad aram in veste purpurea splendens stabat et monachi discipulique post aram in choro cantabant.

'Pater noster, qui es in caelis...' cantare abbas incipiebat. Omnes discipuli cantabant praeter Augustinum, qui dormiebat quod Stephanus eum per totam noctem epistulas sancti Pauli ad Corinthios exscribere iusserat. Augustinus poenas dabat quod in schola carmina Catulli, non epistulas sancti Pauli, legebat.

'Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos a malo,' abbas cantabat.

agricola-ae [m]	farmer
ara-ae [f]	altar
candela-ae [f]	candle
celebro-are	celebrate
chorus-i [m]	choir
Corinthi-orum	Corinthians
epistula-ae [f]	letter
eum	him
exscribo-ere	write out
familia-ae [f]	family
fragrantia-ae [f]	odour
incensum-i [n]	incense
inter [+acc.]	among
ipse	himself
iusserat	(she) had ordered
iuxta [+acc.]	next to
libera	free, deliver
missa-ae [f]	mass
ne... inducas	do not lead us into
noster	our
peregrinus-i [m]	foreigner, pilgrim
poenas do-are	to pay the penalty, be punished
primus-a-um	first
purpureus-a-um	purple
qui	who
splendeo-ere	be bright, resplendent
subsellium-i [n]	pew, bench
tentatio-nis [f]	temptation
vestis-is [f]	clothing



## Practice (i)

- Translate the underlined verbs into Latin (all verbs should be in the imperfect):
  - She used to love the student.
  - They were listening to their mother.
  - We would send food to the slaves.
  - Where were you, Paul?
  - I could see all the students in the church.
  - She always warned us.
  - All the poems of Catullus were in the book.
- Put the underlined verbs into the imperfect and translate:
  - Pluit. (pluit, pluere)
  - Miserabile corpus in terra iacet. (iaceo-ere)
  - Carmina Catulli legimus. (lego-ere)
  - Monachum prope ecclesiam sepeliunt. (sepelio-ire)
  - Virgo flet. (fleo-ere)

## Adjectives ending -ens

You have already met adjectives like *sanctus* and *omnis*. You will also come across adjectives like *omnipotens* or *prudens*. These are third declension adjectives, similar to *omnis*. Most of the cases have a 't' and extra syllable:

	<i>prudens wise</i>		
Case	Masc./fem.		Neuter
		Singular	
Nominative	<b>prud-ens</b>		<b>prud-ens</b>
Accusative	<b>prud-entem</b>		<b>prud-ens</b>
Genitive		<b>prud-entis</b>	
Dative		<b>prud-enti</b>	
Ablative		<b>prud-enti</b>	
		Plural	
Nominative	<b>prud-entes</b>		<b>prud-entia</b>
Accusative	<b>prud-entes</b>		<b>prud-entia</b>
Genitive		<b>prud-entium</b>	
Dative		<b>prud-entibus</b>	
Ablative		<b>prud-entibus</b>	

## Present participles

A participle is a cross between an adjective and a verb. It has the function of an adjective but is formed from a verb:

Augustinus viatores  
monasterium  
relinquentes vidit.

Augustine saw the travellers  
leaving the monastery.

Relinquentes agrees with viatores. Unlike an ordinary adjective, a participle can have an object of its own, here monasterium:

A present participle can be translated in different ways:

Augustine saw the travellers who were as they were leaving the monastery.

These participles all share the endings of **prud-ens**. Participles of verbs from the first conjugation, like **amare**, have an **a** in place of the **e** in the ending:

amo-are  
moneo-ere  
mitto-ere  
audio-ire  
capio-ere

am-ans  
mon-ens  
mitt-ens  
audi-ens  
capt-ens

loving  
advising, warning  
sending  
listening (to), hearing  
taking, capturing

## Adjectives as nouns

The traditional 'parts of speech' (i.e. nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc.) from time to time adopt each other's roles. If your grasp of these is still a little shaky, pursue them on p. vii and through the Index of grammar support on p. viii.

It is not uncommon for journalists and others to use nouns as adjectives in English (e.g. 'Government sex scandal cover up'). Conversely we use adjectives as nouns: 'The good, the bad, and the ugly'.

Latin adjectives (and participles) also act as nouns:

**Nobiles** in ecclesia sedent.

The nobles are sitting in the church.

Ille qui proximus **dormienti**  
stat.

He who is standing next to  
the one-who-sleeps.

## Insolentes monachi The insolent monks

In ecclesia Lucia Paulum et Augustinum, qui adhuc dormiebat, conspexit. Iam Augustinus stertere incipiebat. Paulus Augustinum excitare volebat quod Stephanum eum spectantem videre poterat.

In primis subsellis Egberta filiam furtim spectantem unum ex discipulis qui in choro cantabant conspexit.

'Lucia, quid spectas?' susurravit Egberta.

'Nil, praeter illum, qui dormit, discipulum,' Lucia respondit. Iam Paulus etiam Luciam spectabat.

'Quis est ille puer qui te spectat?' rogavit mater.

'Quis puer?'

'Puer ille qui proximus dormienti stat,' inquit Egberta ridens. 'Eho, nunc abbas praedicabit.' Egberta tamen ridere desiit ubi Benedictum se ipsam spectantem conspexit. 'Insolentissimos monachos!' susurravit Egberta, et Karolus, coniunx, eam audiens rogavit: 'Mea carissima, vales-ne?'

Interea Stephanus Augustinum dormientem adhuc stertentemque spectabat. Paulus Stephanum spectabat et 'Cave, Augustine!' susurravit, 'nunc est cantandum.'

'Abi!' respondit magna voce Augustinus. 'Volo dormire.' Omnes in ecclesia vocem eius audire poterant.

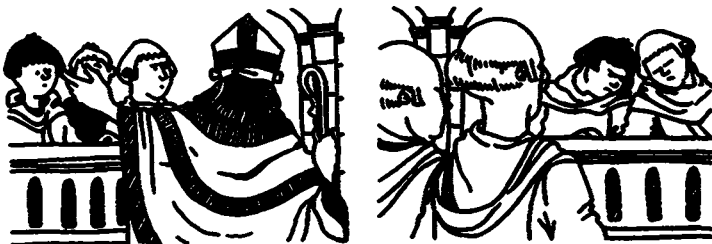
'Ora pro nobis peccatoribus,' cantabat abbas, palmas ad caelum tendens.

<b>abi</b>	<i>go away!</i>
<b>carissimus-a-um</b>	<i>dearest</i>
<b>cave</b>	<i>look out</i>
<b>coniunx-gis [m/f]</b>	<i>husband/wife</i>
<b>conspexit</b>	<i>(s/he) caught sight of</i>
<b>desiit</b>	<i>(s/he) stopped</i>
<b>eam</b>	<i>her</i>
<b>eius</b>	<i>his/her</i>
<b>furtim</b>	<i>secretly</i>
<b>illum [acc.]</b>	<i>that one, him</i>
<b>ipsam</b>	<i>her(self)</i>
<b>nil (nihil)</b>	<i>nothing</i>
<b>nunc est cantandum</b>	<i>it is time to sing</i>
<b>ora pro nobis peccatoribus</b>	<i>pray for us sinners</i>
<b>palma-ae [f]</b>	<i>palm</i>
<b>proximus-a-um</b>	<i>next, nearest</i>
<b>quis</b>	<i>who, which</i>
<b>respondit</b>	<i>(s/he) replied</i>
<b>se</b>	<i>her(him/them)self</i>
<b>sterto-ere</b>	<i>snore</i>
<b>te [acc.]</b>	<i>you</i>
<b>tendo-ere</b>	<i>stretch</i>
<b>valeo-ere</b>	<i>to be well</i>
<b>volebat</b>	<i>(s/he) wanted</i>

## Practice (ii)

1 Choose the correct form for each gap from: praedicans, praedicantem, praedicantes, dormiens, dormientem, dormientes:

(a) Discipuli abbatem in ecclesia \_\_\_\_ audiebant.



(b) Omnes monachi discipulos \_\_\_\_ videre poterant.

2 Change the underlined word to the plural if singular, or singular if plural, and translate:

- (a) Egberta ova e sarcina cadentia videt.
- (b) Lucia monachos in ecclesia cantantes audiebat.
- (c) Paulus cum discipulo stertenti sedebat.
- (d) Abbatissa cibum monachis dormientibus non dabit.
- (e) Benedictus ancillam in culina susurrantem audiebat.
- (f) Femina Theodorum in silva currentem videre poterat.

## Living Latin

### 'Yaysoos in chaylo'

Latin was finally dropped from Catholic liturgy in the 1960s, ending an unbroken line of Latin from the Church's earliest days. The pronunciation will have varied from country to country and priest to priest. Some of the clergy may have harboured a love for classical Latin, but the primary use of the language was to get the Christian message across to their local brethren. Each region of the Christian domain will have had its own mix of Latin and local speech habits, evolving over many centuries. In 1912 Pope Pius X, who wanted to create a uniform pronunciation of Latin, encouraged the clergy everywhere to adopt what was then the Italian pronunciation. Hence 'Yaysoos', 'bone-us' and 'chaylum' for Jesus, bonus and caelum. The pronunciation of the Latin used by the Church during the twentieth century has no foundation earlier than this point.

- 1 The Vulgate was the first full Latin version of the bible, translated by St Jerome at the end of the fourth century.

**\*Hoc autem dico, fratres, quoniam caro et sanguis regnum Dei possidere non possunt: neque corruptio incorruptelam possidebit. In momento, in ictu oculi, in novissima tuba: canet enim, et mortui resurgent incorrupti, et nos immutabimur. Oportet enim corruptibile hoc induere incorruptelam: et mortale hoc induere immortalitatem, tunc fiet sermo qui scriptus est: Absorta est mors in victoria. Ubi est, mors, victoria tua? Ubi est, mors, stimulus tuus?**

(St Paul, Corinthians I, 15: 50, 52-5)

*This I tell you, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God: neither will the perishable possess immortality. In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last call of the trumpet: for it will sound, and the bodiless dead will rise, and we shall be changed; for this matter must lose its perishability, and this mortality become immortal; then the saying which is written will come to pass: 'Death is swallowed up in victory. Where, death, is your victory? Where, death, is your sting?'*

- 2 St Benedict was a contemporary of Jerome. His order has survived centuries of religious conflict, and there are now monasteries all over Europe.

**\*Cellerarius monasterii eligatur de congregatione sapiens, maturus moribus, sobrius, non multum edax, non elatus, non turbulentus, non iniuriosus, non tardus, non prodigus, sed timens Deum, qui omni congregationi sit sicut pater.**

(Regula sancti Benedicti, xxxi)

*A procurator for the monastery should be picked from the community, a prudent fellow of mature character, sober, without a great appetite, with no pretensions, not a trouble-maker, not one who causes harm, punctual, parsimonious, and fearing the Lord; a man who may be a father to the community.*

- 3 Monks of the middle ages were not too immersed in pious abstinence and godly spirituality to overlook the pleasures of life. Refuge from the rigours of monasticism was found in the bottle, with girlfriends, and with the pen. Many anonymous verses have survived, some of which were parodies of formal, ecclesiastical Latin:

**\*Bibat ille, bibat illa,  
bibat servus et ancilla,  
bibat hera, bibat herus:  
ad bibendum nemo serus.**

Let him drink and her drink, and the serf have one, the maid too, and the mistress, and the master – no one's too late for a jugful.

\* post-classical

## Revision

1 Write a sentence with:

- (a) the present participle of *devoro*-are;
- (b) the present participle of *ululo*-are;
- (c) the present participle of *bibo*-ere;
- (d) the gerundive of *audio*-ire.

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Augustine was sleeping for twelve hours.
- (b) Wise teachers always used to drink with students.
- (c) Lucia, could you hear the mule drinking in the field?
- (d) The students were watching the abbot leading a procession out of the church.

3 Fill each gap with the corresponding form in the correct tense:

	Infinitive	Present	Future	Imperfect
<i>love</i>	<b>amare</b>	<b>amamus</b>	<b>amabimus</b>	<b>amabamus</b>
<i>hear</i>	<b>audire</b>	<b>audit</b>	<b>audiet</b>	<b>audiebat</b>
<i>work</i>	<b>laborare</b>		<b>laborabitis</b>	<b>laborabatis</b>
<i>send</i>		<b>mitto</b>		<b>mittebam</b>
		<b>venis</b>	<b>venies</b>	<b>veniebas</b>
<i>write</i>			<b>scribent</b>	
<i>take</i>		<b>capit</b>		
	<b>timere</b>		<b>timebis</b>	
<i>give</i>		<b>dat</b>		
<i>open</i>		<b>aperio</b>		
		<b>vident</b>		
		<b>laudamus</b>		
<i>do</i>	<b>facere</b>			<b>faciebat</b>
<i>teach</i>		<b>docetis</b>		

4 Check you know these words:

*agricola*-ae  
*post*  
*n(ih)il*

*epistula*-ae  
*praeter*  
*quis*

*peregrinus*-i  
*iubeo*-ere  
*primus*-a-um

# 12

**in manus tuas  
commendo  
spiritum meum**  
into your hands I commend my  
spirit

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- perfect tense
- personal pronouns: ego, tu, nos, vos
- meus, tuus, noster, vester  
(my, your, our, your [pl])
- and find out more about Latin in 'The murder in a cathedral'

## Past tense: perfect

The perfect ('finished', 'perfected') is a past tense describing an action which is more momentary or instantaneous than that of the imperfect. In general the imperfect points us to the action itself, the perfect to the completion of the action (and therefore what comes next). In the two examples below, the same English verbal phrase is used to translate both tenses. But in one, the 'hurrying' is a singular, momentary, completed event, and in the other a recurring one.

### Perfect

Stephanus ad fenestram  
festinavit.

Stephen hurried to the  
window.

### Imperfect

Stephanus ad fenestram  
saepe festinabat.

Stephen often hurried (used to  
hurry) to the window.

## Perfect endings

	am-are love	mon-ere warn, advise	mitt-ere send
I	amav-i	monu-i	mis-i
you (s.)	amav-isti	monu-isti	mis-isti
s/he, it	amav-it	monu-it	mis-it
we	amav-imus	monu-imus	mis-imus
you (pl.)	amav-istis	monu-istis	mis-istis
they	amav-erunt	monu-erunt	mis-erunt
	aud-ire hear	cap-ere take, capture	
I	audiv-i	cep-i	
you (s.)	audiv-isti	cep-isti	
s/he, it	audiv-it	cep-it	
we	audiv-imus	cep-imus	
you (pl.)	audiv-istis	cep-istis	
they	audiv-erunt	cep-erunt	

In the perfect tense the endings of the verbs are not the only parts to change. Some verbs have a different stem. Try to remember it when you look the verb up.



ambulo	ambulare	ambulavi	I (have) walked
laudo	laudare	laudavi	I (have) praised
habeo	habere	habui	I (have) had
video	videre	vidi	I saw, have seen
scribo	scribere	scripsi	I wrote, have written
dico	dicere	dixi	I (have) said
venio	venire	veni	I came, have come
facio	facere	fecit	I (have) made, did, have done
sum	esse	fui	I have been, was

## Practice (i)

1 Translate into Latin (in the perfect tense):

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) He has walked. | (e) You (s.) have warned. |
| (b) They saw.      | (f) He heard.             |
| (c) We have come.  | (g) We have sent.         |
| (d) I have taken.  | (h) She advised.          |

2 Change the underlined verbs to the corresponding perfect form, and translate:

- (a) Monachus servo dicit.  
 (b) Ancillas in culina laudamus.  
 (c) Dani-ne omnia monasteria capiunt?  
 (d) Epistulam episcopo scribis?

► **Si munimentum quaeris, circumspice** *If you seek protection, look around you*

Adhuc abbas in ecclesia praedicabat: Hic, in ecclesia, ubi sedemus, ubi oramus, ubi Deum laudamus, est vestra securitas. Si igitur munimentum quaeritis, circumspicite. Ecce tectum! Ecce magni muri! Hic in ecclesia vos curavimus, nunc vos curamus, et post mortem animas vestras semper curabimus. Aedificatum lapidibus monasterium centum annos hic stetit et hic stabit annos mille! Hic sunt omnia tuta. Quod vestras animas illud vestras res custodire potest. Iterum vobis dico: in ecclesia non solum animae sed etiam res sunt tutae. Scitis-ne cur haec dicam? Rumores quosdam audivimus, non quidem confirmatos, sed tamen referendos. Nihil nos vidimus. Alieni-ne in silvis adfuerunt? Vidit-ne alienos in silva Theodorus? Quis nunc dicere potest? Theodorum miserum! Theodorus saltem in caelo cum angelis requiescit. Cras, ergo, si vultis esse securi, boves oves equi mulique in monasterii agros adducendi sunt. Si vobis placet, etiam res vestras in monasterio relinquantis. Vel autem, si mavultis, res vestras retinere licet, sed cavete.'

<b>aedificatus-a-um</b>	<i>built</i>
<b>alienus-i [m]</b>	<i>stranger</i>
<b>angelus-i [m]</b>	<i>angel</i>
<b>bos-vis [m/f]</b>	<i>ox</i>
<b>cavete</b>	<i>take care</i>
<b>centum</b>	<i>hundred</i>
<b>circumspicite</b>	<i>look around</i>
<b>confirmatus-a-um</b>	<i>confirmed</i>
<b>cras</b>	<i>tomorrow</i>
<b>custodio-ire</b>	<i>guard, watch over</i>
<b>haec [n.pl.]</b>	<i>these things</i>
<b>hic</b>	<i>here</i>
<b>lapis-idis [m]</b>	<i>stone</i>
<b>licet</b>	<i>it is permitted</i>
<b>mavultis</b>	<i>you prefer</i>
<b>mille</b>	<i>thousand</i>
<b>munimentum-i [n]</b>	<i>protection</i>
<b>murus-i [m]</b>	<i>wall</i>
<b>non solum... sed etiam</b>	<i>not only... but also</i>
<b>ovis-is [f]</b>	<i>sheep</i>
<b>placet</b>	<i>it pleases</i>
<b>quaero-ere</b>	<i>seek</i>
<b>quidem</b>	<i>indeed</i>
<b>quod... illud</b>	<i>that which... that...</i>
<b>quosdam</b>	<i>certain, unspecified</i>
<b>refero, referre</b>	<i>report</i>
<b>relinquatis</b>	<i>you may leave</i>
<b>requiesco-ere</b>	<i>rest</i>
<b>res [f]</b>	<i>things, possessions</i>
<b>saltem</b>	<i>at least</i>
<b>securitas-tatis [f]</b>	<i>peace of mind</i>
<b>securus-a-um</b>	<i>sure, secure</i>
<b>sto-are, steti</b>	<i>stand</i>
<b>tectum-i [n]</b>	<i>ceiling</i>
<b>tutus-a-um</b>	<i>safe</i>
<b>vester-tra-trum</b>	<i>your</i>
<b>vos, vobis [dat.]</b>	<i>you (pl.)</i>

### Personal pronouns: **ego, tu, nos, vos**

They are only used in the nominative case for emphasis, because subject pronouns are implied in the ending of a verb (if there is no subject noun):

Danos non vidimus.

Nos nihil vidimus.*We did not see the Danes.*We saw nothing.

Pronouns are words used in place of nouns (*pro* is the Latin word for *in place of*):

	<i>I/me</i>	<i>you (s.)</i>	<i>we/us</i>	<i>you (pl.)</i>
Nom.	ego	tu	nos	vos
Acc.	me	te	nos	vos
Gen.	mei	tui	nostrī/nostrum	vestri/vestrum
Dat.	mihi/mi	tibi	nobis	vobis
Abl.	me	te	nobis	vobis

The preposition *cum* *with* often follows rather than precedes a pronoun, and is attached to it: *nobiscum with us*, *mecum with me*.

### 'My', 'your', 'our'

The possessive adjectives *meus*, *mea*, *meum* *my*, *tuus*, *tua*, *tuum* *your (s.)* have endings like *sanctus-a-um*, as do the plural equivalents *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum* *our* and *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum* *your (pl.)* with the exception of the nominative masculine singular (-er):

*my*  
*your (sing.)*  
*our*  
*your (pl.)*

*meus-a-um, etc.*  
*tuus-a-um, etc.*  
*noster, -tra, -trum, etc.*  
*vester, -tra, -trum, etc.*

### Da mi basia mille Give me a thousand kisses

'Nunc, o amici, est optandum,' abbas adhuc praedicabat. 'Nos monachi, qui in monasterio habitamus, scientiae artium vitarum animarum sumus custodes. Deo volente, nos vigilantes capita bonaque vestra bene curabimus. Nunc, igitur, si dormire sine cura vultis, hodie in monasterium bona vestra capitaque adducenda sunt.' Abbatis vox e somno Augustinum excitavit.

'Dormire?' inquit Augustinus. 'Ego certe dormire sine cura volo.'

'St.' susurravit Paulus. 'Dani prope monasterium visi sunt.'

'Non credol' inquit Augustinus. 'Cuius est fama?'

'Stephani.'

'Stephani? Si elephantus iuxta Stephanum sedeat, magister noster eum non agnoscat.'

'Immo. Theodorus ante mortem Danos in silvis ipse vidit et Stephano dixit.' Augustinus Paulum non audivit sed Luciam in primo subsellio spectabat: 'Da mi basia,' murmuravit Augustinus.

'Quid?'

'Da mi basia mille'.

'St. Taceas.'

'Deinde usque altera mille.'

'Equidem tibi nulla basia dabo,' ridebat Paulus.

'Eheu!' gemit Augustinus, 'Illa te solum spectat, te solum amat. *Ille mi par esse deo videtur, ille, si fas est, superare divos.*'

'Quis est ille?' rogavit Paulus.

'Tu.'

'Ego?'

'Ita vero.' inquit Augustinus. 'Cupido est saevus. Me miserum. *Certas habuit puer ille sagittas.*'

'Io satis carminum!' exclamavit Paulus.

'Rosa veris, quae videris clarior quam Illium,' murmuravit Augustinus. Subito Pater Stephanus apparuit:

'Augustine et Paule, hodie ambo vos mecum ad Patrem Ricardum venietis,' inquit magister. 'Ille vos severissime verberabit.'

'Nos? Cur?' rogavit Augustinus.

'Semper in ecclesia estis garruli. Vos antea admonui. Nunc poenas dabit.''

'Ignoscas nobis. Te oro, Magister, ne nos ducas ad Ricardum. Si tibi placet, rursum regulam monachorum exscribam.'

'O Sancta Maria!'

'Te oramus.'

'O molesti pueri .... esto. Sed si vos iterum susurrantes in ecclesia videbo, ambo verberandi eritis. Totus liber est exscribendus - hodie.'

'Ut vis, Magister.'

'St. Nunc cum ceteris discipulis cantandum est.'

Tandem abbas praedicare desiit. Omnes 'Deo gratias,' responderunt et cantare inceperunt.

agnoscat	would recognize
altera	another
ante(a)	before(hand)
appareo-ere-ui	appear
ars-tis [f]	art, skill
basium-i [n]	kiss
caput, capitis [n]	head, capital
certus-a-um	sure, unerring
clarior	more lovely

<b>cu</b> ius	<i>whose</i>
<b>cura</b> -ae [f]	<i>anxiety, stress</i>
<b>custos</b> -dis [m/f]	<i>guardian</i>
<b>da</b>	<i>give!</i>
<b>de</b> inde	<i>then, next</i>
<b>deo</b> volente	<i>with God willing</i>
<b>divus</b> -i [m]	<i>god</i>
<b>equi</b> dem	<i>indeed, to be sure</i>
<b>esto</b>	<i>so be it</i>
<b>fama</b> -ae [f]	<i>story, report</i>
<b>fas</b>	<i>not blasphemous</i>
<b>garrulus</b> -a-um	<i>talkative</i>
<b>gemo</b> -ere-ui	<i>groan</i>
<b>illa</b> [f]	<i>she, that</i>
<b>ille</b> [m]	<i>he, that</i>
<b>immo</b>	<i>no</i>
<b>io</b>	<i>hey</i>
<b>ipse</b>	<i>he himself</i>
<b>lilium</b> -i [n]	<i>lily</i>
<b>molestus</b> -a-um	<i>troublesome</i>
<b>ne</b> ducas	<i>do not take</i>
<b>opto</b> -are	<i>choose</i>
<b>par</b>	<i>equal</i>
<b>quae</b> videris	<i>you who seem</i>
<b>quam</b>	<i>than</i>
<b>quid</b>	<i>what</i>
<b>rosa</b> -ae [f]	<i>rose</i>
<b>russum</b>	<i>again</i>
<b>sagitta</b> -ae [f]	<i>arrow</i>
<b>scientia</b> -ae [f]	<i>knowledge</i>
<b>sedeat</b>	<i>were to sit</i>
<b>severissime</b>	<i>very severely</i>
<b>supero</b> -are	<i>surpass</i>
<b>usque</b>	<i>and on to</i>
<b>ver</b> -is [n]	<i>spring</i>
<b>verbero</b> -are	<i>beat</i>
<b>videtur</b>	<i>(s/he) seems</i>
<b>vigilans</b>	<i>watchful</i>
<b>visi</b> sunt	<i>were seen</i>
<b>vita</b> -ae [f]	<i>life</i>

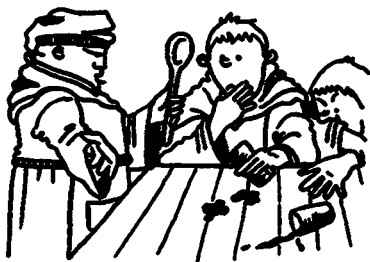
## Practice (ii)

Rewrite the words in brackets in their correct forms:

(a) In ecclesia (nos) monachi (vester) pecuniam custodiemus.



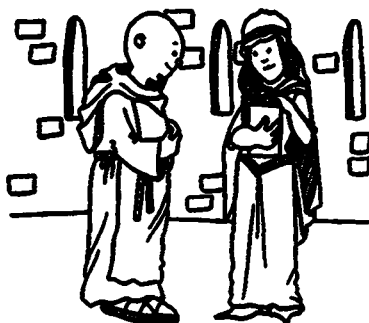
(b) Ubi est (meus-a-um) vinum? Ancillae-ne vinum (vos) dederunt?



(c) (Meus-a-um) carmina (tu) dare volo.



(d) *Gratias (tu), multas gratias.*



## ► Living Latin

### The murder in a cathedral

The sacrosanctity of a church in the middle ages was taken for granted. Refugees from the bloodiest conflicts might seek sanctuary in a church and even the least godfearing of soldiers would think twice before breaking it. The majority of people lived very parochial lives. The local church was one of the few stone buildings some might ever see. Here was a solid fortress for their protection, and a symbol of permanence and life everlasting. A church was, in both senses, a building you could have faith in.

Cathedrals were even more imposing, and some still stand out in today's urban skylines. How much more impressive when all around them lay wooden houses and thatched huts. Canterbury Cathedral was the scene of Thomas Becket's murder in the twelfth century, a shocking episode because an archbishop was hacked to death – in a cathedral.

This is an abbreviated version of the account by an eyewitness to Thomas' murder, William FitzStephen\*:

1 The monks persuade Thomas to come into the church.

**Quid nisi timor et tremor venerunt super nos monachos, clericos et socios archiepiscopi? Sed bonus ille Thomas contemptor mortis erat.**

Nothing but fear and trembling came over us monks, clerics, and companions of the archbishop. But the good Thomas was disdainful of death.

## 2 The assassins arrive.

Iturus ad aram superiorem, iam quattuor gradus ascenderat, cum ecce ad ostium claustrī, quo veneramus, primus adest Reginaldus Ursonis lorīcatus, ense evaginato, et vociferans, 'Nunc huc ad me, homines regis!' Nec multo post adduntur ei tres socii eius, similiter lorīcis contacti corpora et capita praeter oculos solos, ensibus nudatis.

*He was about to go up to the upper altar and had already gone up four steps, when there by the door to the cloister, where we had entered, stood the first of them, Reginaldus Ursonis, in full armour, sword drawn, shouting, 'Now follow me, men of the king!' A moment later his three accomplices joined him, their bodies and heads covered with armour except for their eyes alone, and their swords drawn.*

## 3 'Where is the traitor?'

Clamavit aliquis, 'Ubi est proditor?' Ille: 'Ecce ego, non proditor, sed presbyter Dei; et miror, quod in tali habitu ecclesiam Dei ingressi estis. Quid placet vobis?' Unus sicarius, 'Ut moriaris.' At ille: 'Et ego in nomine Domini mortem suscipio, et animam meam et ecclesiae causam Deo et beatae Mariae et sanctis huius ecclesiae patronis commendo. Absit ut propter gladios vestros fugiam.'

*One of them shouted: 'Where is the traitor?' He replied: 'Here I am, no traitor, but a priest of God; and I am surprised that you have entered the house of God in such attire. What is your business?' One of the murderers said: 'To kill you.' He replied: 'I embrace death in the name of the Lord, and I commend my soul and the cause of the church to God, to Blessed Mary and to the patron saints of this church. Don't think that I will run from your swords.'*

## 4 His death.

Quidam eum plano ense caedebat inter scapulas, dicens, 'Fuge; mortuus es.' Ille immotus perstitit, et cervicem praebens, se Domino commendabat. 'In manus tuas, Domine, commendo spiritum meum.' Datur in caput eius ictus secundus. Super dextram cecidit, ad dextram Dei iturus.



One of them whipped him across his shoulders with a flat blade, saying, 'Run; you are a dead man.' He didn't budge but stood his ground, and offering his neck he entrusted himself to the Lord. 'Into your hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit.' A second blow struck his head. He fell to the right, on his way to the right hand of God.

\*post-classical

## Revision

- 1 Fill each gap with the corresponding form in the correct tense:

	Infinitive	Present	Future	Imperfect	Perfect
walk	ambulare	ambulat			ambulavit
come	venire	venimus			venimus
			laudabitis		laudavistis
teach		doceo			docui
		dicis	dices		
				scribebant	
take			caplemus		
	videre		videbunt		
be			erit		fuit

- 2 Rewrite these sentences making underlined words plural (if singular) and singular (if plural), and translate:
- (a) O Augustine, mihi dulce carmen tuum leges?
- (b) Miser Stephanus cum discipulo in bibliotheca semper laborabat.
- (c) Lucia-ne peregrinos in silva audivit?
- (d) Ancilla nos monuit.
- 3 Translate into Latin (use the perfect for all past tenses):
- (a) Students, did Theodorus walk with you in the wood?
- (b) Augustine, did you hear the abbot preaching?
- (c) I saw the abbess whispering to the cook.
- (d) Paul, did you write a letter to Lucia?
- 4 Check you know these words:

centum  
cura-ae  
deinde  
quidem

mille  
scientia-ae  
rursum

annus-i  
vita-ae  
subito

# **revision II**

## **(units 07-12)**

1 Fill the gaps with the correct form (tense and person) of one of:

canto-are-avi

devoro-are-avi

dormio-ire-ivi

scribo-ere, scripsi

video-ere, vidi



(a) Abbatissa nobis \_\_\_\_  
(future).



(b) Monachi \_\_\_\_ (present)  
quod multum cibum  
vinumque \_\_\_\_ (perfect).



(c) Multos Danos in  
silva \_\_\_\_ (perfect)?!



- (d) Paulus epistulam  
Luciae \_\_\_\_ (present).

2 Identify the future, imperfect and perfect forms of the underlined verbs:

- (a) In bibliotheca discipulus carmina recitat.  
 (b) Discipuli rident.  
 (c) O ancillae, Danos auditis?  
 (d) Epistulam Luciae scribo.

3 Choose the correct form of the gerundive:

- (a) Peregrini multas linguas (doceo-ere) sunt.  
 (b) Nunc corpus miserabile est (sepelio-ire).  
 (c) Discipuli mali non (laudo-are) sunt.  
 (d) Epistula non in ecclesia sed in bibliotheca est (scribo-ere).

4 Choose the correct form of the present participle:

- (a) Monachus in terram cecidit e silva (fugio-ere).  
 (b) Abbatem ex monasterio pompam (duco-ere) spectavi.  
 (c) Amicos nostros in ecclesia (sedeo-ere) vidimus.  
 (d) Discipulus virgines in horto (canto-are) audivit.

5 Write out the following nouns in all five cases, singular and plural:

annus-i, vita-ae, oppidum-i, potio-nis, clamor-is,  
tempus-oris

6 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Did you hear the maiden's song, Father Stephen?  
 (b) The bishop was preaching to all the monks.  
 (c) Soon we shall bury the monk's pitiable corpse.  
 (d) The cook was drinking wine with the sad student all night long.

## 7 Group the English words with their Latin ancestor:

hospes, hospitis	sure	dainty
caput, capitis	predicate	dish
discus-i	fantasy	hotel
dignitas, dignitatis	cattle	hospital
phantasia-ac	secure	disk
praedico-are	capital	hospice
blasphemo-are	blaspheme	chapter
securus-a-um	hostel	dignity
computo-are		blame
		preach
		count
		fancy
		computer
		disco
		host

- 8 A popina is (a) an illegitimate daughter of a pope; (b) a small flower found in Rumania, which produces opium; (c) an ancient inn or take-away – a place to pop in for a quick snack?

# 13

## **Paulus sub aqua** Paulus under water

**In this unit you will learn about**

- **past participles**
- **perfect passive (past participles with esse)**
- **participle phrases (including the ablative absolute)**
- **irregular verb: eo, ire (to go)**
- **and find out more about Latin in 'A winter's night'**

## Past participles: *desiderata*

So far you have met three core forms of a verb:

<b>desidero</b>	<i>I desire, long for</i>
<b>desiderare</b>	<i>to desire, long for</i>
<b>desideravi</b>	<i>I (have) desired, longed for</i>

There is a fourth and final form worth a look, the past participle:

<b>cibus desideratus</b>	<i>the desired food</i>
<b>unguenta desiderata</b>	<i>the desired perfumes</i>
<b>libri desiderati</b>	<i>the desired books</i>

The past participle is like the present one (see p. 112) in so far as it is an adjective formed from a verb. The endings, however, are not the same. The past participle has endings like **sanctus-am** (**mulus, silva, vinum**):

<b>Ancilla in culinam <u>vinum desideratum</u> portavit.</b>	<i>A maid carried the longed-for wine into the kitchen.</i>
<b>Paulus <u>virgini desideratae</u> dicere volebat.</b>	<i>Paul wanted to speak to the girl he longed for (lit. the longed-for girl).</i>

## Practice (i)

Complete the table of the four main parts (or 'principal parts') of a verb. A fifth column is added for English words which have a similar form to the past participle.

Present ('I...')	Infinitive ('to...')	Perfect ('I have...')	Past participle (neuter)	Derivative
oro	orare	oravi	oratum	oration
narro	narrare	narravi	narratum	narrative
aestimo	aestimare		aestimatum	estimation
sto	stare	steti	statum	
saluto	salutare	salutavi		salutation
recito		recitavi	recitatum	recitation
vaco	vacare	vacavi		vacation
damno	damnare	damnavi	damnatum	
maneo	manere	mansi	mansum	
rideo		risi	risum	(de)rision
sedeo	sedere	sedi		session
teneo	tenere	tenui		(at)tention
video	videre	vidi	visum	
moneo		monui		(ad)monition

Present (‘I...’)	Infinitive (‘to...’)	Perfect (‘I have...’)	Past participle (neuter)	Derivative
dico	dicere	dixi		diction
duco		duxī		(in)duction
relinquo		reliqui	relictum	(de)reliction
scribo	scribere	scripsi		(de)scription
ascendo	ascendere	ascendi		ascension
ago	agere	egi		action
audio	audire	audivi		audition
venio	venire	veni		(in)vention
perficio	perficere	perfecti		perfection
recipio	recipere	recepi		reception

The past participle (*desideratus-a-um*) is usually passive, whereas the present participle is active:

*mulus desideratus*                      *the longed-for mule*                      (passive)  
*mulus desiderans*                      *the mule, longing for...*                      (active)

So far you have met mostly active expressions, with the subject as the ‘doer’ and the object ‘done to’. For examples of the passive, see pp. 93, 157.

## Past participles with esse

With the appropriate part of *sum, esse*, the past participle becomes part of the verb itself, in the perfect passive:

*Paulus ad oppidum missus est.*                      *Paul was sent to the town.*  
*Ancillae numquam laudatae*                      *The maids were never*  
*sunt.*                      *praised.*

Note that when the participle is used with *est* or *sunt*, the meaning is past (*was sent*, not *is sent*; and *were never praised*, not *are never praised*).

## Practice (ii)

Complete each sentence with the past participle in its correct form, and translate:

- Theodorus in agro (*sepelio-ire-ivi, sepultum*) est.
- Peregrini in silva (*video-ere, vidi, visum*) sunt.
- Mulus ab umbris (*terreo-ere, terrui, territum*) est.
- Virgo a patre (*laudo-are-avi, laudatum*) est.



## Past participles without esse

The verb 'to be' is sometimes left out (if a sentence appears to be without a verb, try *est* or *sunt*, as these are often left implied, or understood):

Unguenta a coquo desiderata, *The perfumes were desired by*  
sed a mulo portata sunt. *the cook, but were carried*  
*by the mule.*

A past participle is often used, not as the main verb, but in conjunction with it:

Iosephus et Maria a tabernis *Joseph and Mary, (having been)*  
reieci stabulum inveniunt. *rejected by the inns, find a*  
*stable.*

The past participle *reieci* describes an action which is completed before that of the main verb *inveniunt*. Hence it is a 'past' participle.

## Practice (iii)

Pair a noun with a past participle, and translate:

carmen... mulus... cenam... discipuli...

e.g. \_\_\_\_ (auditus-a-um) ancillae omnes amaverunt.

Carmen auditum ancillae omnes amaverunt.

*All the maids loved the poem having-been-heard (after they had heard it).*

- (a) \_\_\_\_ in silvam (ductus-a-um) umbras timet.
- (b) \_\_\_\_ a Stephano (doctus-a-um) obdormiverunt.
- (c) \_\_\_\_ ab ancillis (paratus-a-um) Benedictus devoravit.

## ▣ Natalis Christi dies *Christ's birthday*

Menses lente transibant. Hiems erat severissima et frigus monasterium invadit. Paulus Luciam videre solam non poterat, quod virgo semper cum matre ambulabat aut in ecclesia orabat. Infelix per longas gelidasque noctes per fenestram stellas spectans in cella iacebat.

Mox natalis Christi dies a monachis celebratus est. Karolus et Egberta et Lucia ad missas audiendas advenerunt et postea domum cum episcopo abbatissaque discesserunt. In monasterio Augustinus ceterique discipuli fabulam agebant: Iosephus et Maria a tabernis reieci stabulum inveniunt. Omnes monachi ab Augustini fabula sunt

exhilarati praeter abbatem qui eam iocosorem vocabat. Multae vini amphorae exhaustae, multi anseres devorati sunt. Sic paucos dies omnes curae sublatae sunt.

Per multos menses monachi anxii fuerant, populus incertus. Media in hieme plurimi Danos propter frigus atque mare turbulentum non expectabant; itaque res suas apud se tenebant. Vere tamen veniente res bovesque in monasterium adductae sunt. Primo thesaurus in ecclesia modicus erat quod exiguae pauperibus servisque res. Sed post paucos dies fictilia, fibulae, scuta, lintea et cetera in ecclesiam tradita sunt; thesaurus igitur gradatim crescebat.

<b>adduco-ere-xi-ductum</b>	<i>bring</i>
<b>amphora-ae [f]</b>	<i>jug</i>
<b>anser-is [m]</b>	<i>goose</i>
<b>apud se</b>	<i>at their homes</i>
<b>aspicio-ere</b>	<i>look at</i>
<b>atque</b>	<i>and</i>
<b>aut</b>	<i>or</i>
<b>celebro-are-avi-atum</b>	<i>celebrate</i>
<b>cella-ae [f]</b>	<i>cell, room</i>
<b>Christus-i</b>	<i>Christ</i>
<b>cresco-ere</b>	<i>grow</i>
<b>discedo-ere-essi</b>	<i>depart</i>
<b>domum</b>	<i>homewards</i>
<b>eam</b>	<i>her, it</i>
<b>exhaurio-ire-ivi, exhaustum</b>	<i>drain, empty</i>
<b>exhilaro-are-avi-atum</b>	<i>cheer</i>
<b>exiguus-a-um</b>	<i>scant, bare</i>
<b>fibula-ae [f]</b>	<i>brooch</i>
<b>fictilia-ium [n]</b>	<i>earthenware</i>
<b>frigus-oris [n]</b>	<i>chill, cold</i>
<b>fuerant</b>	<i>(they) had been</i>
<b>gelidus-a-um</b>	<i>cold</i>
<b>gradatim</b>	<i>gradually</i>
<b>hiems, hiemis [f]</b>	<i>winter</i>
<b>iocosorem</b>	<i>too flippan</i>
<b>linteum-i [n]</b>	<i>linen cloth</i>
<b>mare-is [n]</b>	<i>sea</i>
<b>medius-a-um</b>	<i>mid-, middle of</i>
<b>mensis-is [m]</b>	<i>month</i>
<b>modicus-a-um</b>	<i>modest, small</i>
<b>natalis dies [m]</b>	<i>birthday</i>
<b>pauper-is [m]</b>	<i>pauper</i>
<b>plurimi</b>	<i>most people</i>

postea	afterwards
propter [+acc.]	because of
reicio-ere-eci-ectum	reject, refuse
scutum-i [n]	shield
severissimus-a-um	very severe, hard
stabulum-i [n]	stable
stella-ae [f]	star
sublatæ sunt	were raised, lifted
suus-a-um	their/his/her own
taberna-ae [f]	inn
thesaurus-i [m]	store
trado-ere-didi-ditum	hand over
transeo-ire	pass, go by
ver-is [n]	spring

## Participles: subject phrases and object phrases

A participle agrees with its noun, as any adjective does, and that noun may be the subject, object or indirect object of the main verb:

Subject:

Iosephus et Maria a tabernis *Joseph and Mary, (having been)*  
reieti stabulum inveniunt. *rejected by the inns, find a*  
*stable.*

Object:

Multos in agris laborantes *He watched many (people)*  
 spectabat. *working in the fields.*

Indirect object:

Paulus visum ad stagnum *Paul turned the mule towards*  
 mulum flectebat. *a pool having-been-seen.*

## Ablative absolute

You will find many noun-and-participle phrases in the ablative. These expressions are almost detachable from the core of the sentence. They work as extra clauses, and are neither subject nor object of the main verb:

Monachi Theodoro sepulto *The monks, with Theodorus*  
 in monasterium reverterunt. *having been buried, came*  
*back into the monastery.*  
*(The monks, after burying*  
*Theodorus, ....)*

Visis mulis alijs mulus  
Pauli rudere incepit.

Vere veniente monachi  
in agros redierunt.

With other mules having-been-  
seen, Paul's mule began to  
bray. (Upon seeing other  
mules ....)

With spring coming the  
monks returned to the  
fields. (At the arrival of  
spring....)

(The ablative of the present participle ends -ente, not -enti, when it is used in an ablative absolute. Otherwise the endings of the present participle are the same as those of prudens – see p. 198).

## Practice (iv)

Choose the correct word and translate:

- (a) Paulus, Augustino  
Tibulli carmina  
(legente/legentia),  
regulam monasterii  
exscribebat.



- (b) Theodorus alienos in silva  
(susurranti/susurrantes) vidit.

- (c) Multo cibo (devoratus/  
devorato) Benedictus  
obdormivit.



## Irregular verb: eo, ire, ii (ivi), itum to go

No language course would be complete without some space devoted to irregular verbs. They are 'irregular' because they do not conform to the patterns of the main conjugations, adopting their abnormal shape partly from breadth of use (words which

are confined to grammarians, lexicographers and crossword buffs may keep their shape for generations, but those which enjoy widespread use can be affected by any number of things); and partly from evolving as a fusion of different roots. Consider for example our verb 'to go' and its different forms: 'go', 'going', 'gone', 'went', 'been'. The French for 'to go' also has radically different forms: the Latin words *ambulo*, *ambulare*, *vado*, *vadere*, and *eo*, *ire* are all roots of *aller* (*je vais*, *j'irai*).

ire to go	Present	Future	Imperfect	Perfect
I	eo	ibo	ibam	ii
you (s.)	is	ibis	ibas	isti
s/he, it	it	ibit	ibat	iit
we	imus	ibimus	ibamus	imus
you (pl.)	itis	ibitis	ibatis	istis
they	eunt	ibunt	ibant	ierunt

Compound forms: *abeo-ire* to depart, *redeo-ire* to return, *adeo-ire* to approach/go to, *exeo-ire* to go out.

### Practice (v)

Translate:

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) We depart.           | (d) They have departed. |
| (b) They will return.    | (e) She goes out.       |
| (c) We were approaching. | (f) They go out.        |

### ▣ Castellum Comitum Karoli Count Charles' castle

Paulus, aestate adveniente, ad oppidum rediit. Die aestuoso sub arbores frondescentes cum mulo per iter insolitum ambulabat; nam Lucia villam spectare volebat. Post tria milia e silvis venerunt et Paulus videre poterat magnum castellum in quo Lucia cum matre Egberta et patre Karolo, viro nobili et ditissimo, habitabat. Comes Karolus regionem totam regebat. Abbas Laurentius et Comes Karolus erant duo in regione potentissimi.

Paulus multos in agris prope castellum laborantes spectabat. Alii herbam metebant, alii faenum in praedium portabant. Subito visis mulis aliis mulus rudere incepit. 'Eheu, tace!' clamavit Paulus habenas quatiens et celeriter mulum in silvam duxit. Prope silvam Paulus visum ad stagnum adiit ubi multam aquam mulus sitiens bibit. Deinde, mulo arbori in silva ligato, Paulus ad stagnum revenit et

veste deposita in aquam frigidam se immersit: sub aquam natavit et rediens ad aequor exhalavit. 'Utinam hic maneam per totum diem,' suspiravit Paulus, et otiosus in aequore innavit caelum contemplans. Haud multo post mulum rudentem audivit. 'Quid est tibi, mule? Tace, improba bestia!'

aequor-is [n]	surface
aestas-tatis [f]	summer
aestuosus-a-um	hot
depono-ere-sui-situm	put down
ditissimus-a-um	very rich
faenum-l [n]	hay
frondesco-ere	put forth leaves
habena-ae [f]	rein
haud multo post	not long afterwards
herba-ae [f]	grass
improbus-a-um	troublesome
inno-are-avi	swim, float
insolitus-a-um	unusual, unfamiliar
iter-ineris [n]	way, route
ligo-are-avi-atum	tie, bind
meto-ere	gather, reap, mow
nato-are-avi	swim
otiosus-a-um	lazy
potentissimus-a-um	most powerful
praedium-l [n]	store, barn
quatio-ere	shake
quid est tibi?	what's the matter with you?
sitiens	thirsty
stagnum-l [n]	pond, lake
suspiro-are-avi	sigh
tria millia	three miles
utinam maneam	if only I might stay

## ► Living Latin

### A winter's night

#### 1 No room in the inn:

\*Exiit edictum a Caesare Augusto, ut describeretur universus orbis. Haec descriptio prima facta est praeside Syriae Quirino: et ibant omnes ut profiterentur singuli in suam civitatem.

Ascendit autem et Ioseph a Galilaea de civitate Nazareth, in Iudaeam civitatem David, quae vocatur Bethleem: eo quod esset de domo et familia David, ut profiteretur cum Maria desponsata sibi uxore praegnate. Factum est autem cum essent ibi, impleti sunt dies ut pareret. Et peperit filium suum primogenitum, et pannis eum involvit: et reclinavit eum in praesepio, quia non erat eis locus in diversorio.

(St Luke II, 1-7)

*A formal command was issued by Caesar Augustus that there should be a census of the whole world. This census first took place when Quirinus was governor of Syria: each and every person went to his own town to be registered. And Joseph went up from Galilee, from the town of Nazareth, into Judaea, to the town of David which is called Bethlehem: he went there, since he belonged to the house and line of David, to register with his wife, Mary, who was heavy with child. And during the time they were there, the day arrived when she gave birth. And she bore a son, her firstborn, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger as there was no room for them in the inn.*

- 2 Refusal of entry is a stock convention of ancient comedy and love poetry. Languishing outside his mistress's house, a lover may have to contend with the door, doorkeeper, dog, husband and bad weather.

**Nam posita est nostrae custodia saeva puellae,  
clauditur et dura ianua firma sera.**

**ianua difficilis domini te verberet imber,  
te Iovis imperio fulmina missa petant.  
ianua, iam pateas uni mihi victa querellis,  
neu furtim verso cardine aperta sones.**

**Et mala si qua tibi dixit dementia nostra,  
ignoscas; capiti sint precor illa meo.**

**Te meminisse decet quae plurima voce peregi  
supplice cum posti florida certa darem.**

**Tu quoque ne timide custodes, Delia, falle.**

**Audendum est: fortes adiuvat ipsa Venus.**

(Tibullus, Elegies I, 2, 5-16)

*A tight security has been put on my girl, and the thick door is closed with an uncaring bolt. You, door, belong to an unfeeling master, and I pray the rain lash you, I pray Jupiter aim his lightning down upon you. Now look here, door, won't you be won over by my pleas and open up just for me? Quietly turn your hinges and don't make a sound as you open. Forgive me if I ever spoke ill of you - I was unhinged. May my curses rebound on my own head.*

*Better you recall my many moments of suppliant pleading when I laid flowery wreaths about your post. And you too, Delia, be fearless and evade your guards. Be bold: Venus herself looks well on the brave.*

\*post-classical

## Revision

1 Translate into Latin and include a present participle in each sentence:

- Theodorus, fearing the pilgrims, went out of the wood.
- For a long time the cook was watching the maidservants working in the garden.
- Father Stephen sat in the church, grieving.
- While Paul was swimming in the pond, the pilgrims were approaching the wood.

2 Translate into Latin and include a past participle in each sentence. Remember that they are passive (e.g. (a) 'The Danes having-been-heard, ...')

- Upon hearing the Danes, Lucia returned to the monastery.
- The meal was prepared by the maids and devoured by the monks.
- The letter was written by the monk and handed over to the count.
- After the horse had been tied to a tree, the student swam in the pond.

3 Complete the table, which includes a column for derivatives similar to the present/infinitive forms:

Present ('I...')	Infinitive ('to...')	Derivative
efficio	efficere	efficient
relinquo	relinquere	relinquish
delinquo	delinquere	
rideo		(de)ride
duco		(pro)duce
scribo	scribere	
recipio	recipere	

4 How would you account for the ending of *desiderata*?



# 14

## **venatrix in silva** a huntress in the wood

**In this unit you will learn about**

- **fourth declension nouns**
- **fifth declension nouns**
- **pluperfect tense**
- **and find out more about Ovid's story of Diana and Actaeon in 'A hunting moral'**

## Nouns: fourth declension

These are similar to nouns of the second declension, although the ending *-us* is not limited to the nominative singular: *-us* could also indicate a genitive singular, nominative plural or accusative plural:

	arcus (m)	bow, arch	
	Singular		Plural
Nominative	arc-us		arc-us
Accusative	arc-um		arc-us
Genitive	arc-us		arc-uum
Dative	arc-ui		arc-ibus
Ablative	arc-u		arc-ibus

## Practice (i)

1 Match each noun to its meaning:

(a)

metus		spirit
impetus	chance	
casus		verse
gradus	fear	step
spiritus		
versus	attack	

(b)

gemitus	hunt	hand
tumultus		noise
vultus		
exercitus	face/expression	
manus		army
venatus	groan	

2 Translate into Latin:

- |                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) with a sad expression | (e) of the holy spirit          |
| (b) by chance             | (f) with a groan                |
| (c) pleasing verses       | (g) the count's armies          |
| (d) by hand               | (h) the maiden's bow and arrows |

## Prepositions with the ablative

The prepositions *in*, *ex* *out of*, *from*, *ab* *by*, *from*, and *cum* *with*, *in the company of* are all used with the ablative. The ablative is also used without a preposition, for example explaining how or with what something is done:

Gemitu dixit.  
Metu pavidus...

*He spoke with a groan.*  
*Quaking with fear...*

## Pluperfect tense

The pluperfect is another past tense, whose English equivalent uses the auxiliary 'had'. It is a further step into the past:

Numquam abbatem  
audiveramus.

*We had never heard the abbot.*

Peregrini nos viderant.

*The pilgrims had seen us.*

The stem of the pluperfect is the same as that of the perfect, the endings are those of *esse* in the imperfect:

	Pluperfect	
<i>I had...</i>	vid-eram	audiv-eram
<i>you had... (s.)</i>	vid-eras	audiv-eras
<i>s/he had...</i>	vid-erat	audiv-erat
<i>we had...</i>	vid-eramus	audiv-eramus
<i>you had... (pl.)</i>	vid-eratis	audiv-eratis
<i>they had...</i>	vid-erant	audiv-erant

## Luciae venatus *Lucia's chase*

### Shared endings key

- us     mulus : nom.  
          tempus : nom. or acc.  
          arcus : nom., gen., nom. pl., acc. pl.

Interea Lucia venatu, qui fuerat longus et sine praemio, fessa erat. Equus eius quoque erat calidus fessusque. Illa igitur in stagno natare constituerat et nunc per silvam ad stagnum adibat. Gemitu tamen muli audito 'Heus, ecquis hic est?' dicens circumspexit. Nullo ergo respondente, sagitta e pharetra erepta, equum lente ad sonitum duxit. In silva mulum atque relictam Pauli vestem agnoscens, ex equo descendit et arcum sagittamque manu tenens furtim ad stagnum adibat.

Paulus, qui mulum audiverat, adhuc caelum contemplant. Subito vocem 'Tolle manus tuas!' audivit. 'Qu... qu... qu... quis es?' metu balbus rogavit, 'Quid vis?'

'Tu-ne anas?' inquit Lucia ridens, simul et arcum sagittamque tenens ex arboribus venit.

'Lucia! Ego Paulus. Nonne me agnoscis?'

'Paulus?'

'Ita vero. Salve, salve! Eheu, tumultu perterritus sum! Vis-ne natare? Age, tibi arcum deponere licet.'

'Cur in hoc loco ades?'

'Natare volui. Si tibi placet, arcum deponere licet.'

'Semper arcum teneo,' respondit illa.

'Tu es sagittaria?' rogavit ille.

'Ita certe sum. Pater me tela conicere docuit. Et tu, quo vadis?'

'Ad oppidum. Ignoscas mihi si non licet natare in hoc stagno.'

'Manere tibi licet.'

'Gratias tibi. In quid arcum intendis?'

'In arborem illam,' inquit Lucia arborem in ulteriore ripa demonstrans.

'Numquam illam percuties!' Paulus risit. Luciae tamen telum per auras stridens eundem in arborem adhaesit. Paulus balbus 'Incredibile ... mirabile,' inquit. 'Tu vera es venatrix. Animalia saepe interficis?'

'Non numquam,' inquit Lucia ridens et stagnum ad sagittam recuperandam circumvenit. 'Hodie tamen nihil cepimus.'

'Nisi mei' risit Paulus.

'Nisi te. Sed bestias multo saeviores quam te vidi.'

'Ego bestias omnes amo nec umquam interficio. Sub caelo omnes vivimus, animalia hominesque....'

'Hssh, taceas, quis est ille?' inquit Lucia.

'Quem dicis?'

'Voces audire possum. Ecce quidam ad stagnum adeunt.'

<b>adhaereo-ere-si</b>	<i>stick</i>
<b>agnosco-ere</b>	<i>recognize</i>
<b>anas-atris [f]</b>	<i>duck</i>
<b>animal-is [n]</b>	<i>animal</i>
<b>balbus-a-um</b>	<i>stammering</i>
<b>calidus-a-um</b>	<i>warm</i>
<b>conicio-ere</b>	<i>throw</i>
<b>constituo-ere-ui</b>	<i>decide</i>
<b>depono-ere</b>	<i>put down</i>
<b>ecquid?</b>	<i>who?</i>
<b>eius</b>	<i>her, his</i>
<b>eripio-ere-ripui-reptum</b>	<i>take out, snatch</i>
<b>eundem [acc.]</b>	<i>same</i>
<b>heus</b>	<i>hey!</i>
<b>illa(m)</b>	<i>she, her, that (fem.)</i>
<b>intendo-ere</b>	<i>aim</i>
<b>interficio-ere</b>	<i>kill</i>
<b>licet</b>	<i>it is permitted</i>
<b>locus-i [m]</b>	<i>place</i>
<b>multo saeviores</b>	<i>much more savage</i>

non numquam	sometimes
nullus	not any, no one
per auras	through the air
percutio-ere	strike, hit
perterritus-a-um	thoroughly scared
pharetra-ae [f]	quiver
praemium-i [n]	reward
quam	than
quem	whom
quidam [nom.]	some (men)
quo	where (to)
quoque	also
recupero-are	recover
ripa-ae [f]	bank
sagittaria-ae [f]	archeress
simul	at the same time
strideo-ere	hum, whistle
telum-i [n]	missile
tolle!	raise, lift!
ulterior	far
umquam	ever
vado-ere	go
venatrix-icis [f]	huntress

## Nouns: fifth declension

This is the last of the declensions, and there are not many nouns belonging to this one. They are very similar to the third declension, with the exception of the genitive singular:

	<b>res (f.) thing, matter</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Nominative	<b>res</b>	<b>res</b>
Accusative	<b>rem</b>	<b>res</b>
Genitive	<b>rei</b>	<b>rerum</b>
Dative	<b>rei</b>	<b>rebus</b>
Ablative	<b>re</b>	<b>rebus</b>

## Practice (ii)

Match each noun to its meaning:

<b>dies</b>	<i>faith</i>	
<b>facies</b>		<i>day</i>
<b>fides</b>	<i>hope</i>	
<b>spes</b>		<i>face</i>

## Compound verbs

These are verbs such as *venire*, *facere*, *capere* with prefixes which add to the essential meaning. See p. 26 for the changes to the root syllable of compound verbs (e.g. *facere*, *reficere*), and p. 62 for English derivatives.

### Practice (iii)

Fill the gaps in the following table, adding a prefix from the list below to the left-hand column:

Prefixes: a(b), ad, circum, cum, de, e(x), in, per

Prefix	Simple verb		Compound	
ad	<i>ire</i>		<i>adire</i>	<i>go to, approach</i>
		<i>go</i>		<i>go out</i>
	<i>esse</i>			<i>be absent</i>
		<i>be</i>	<i>adesse</i>	
	<i>mittere</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>amittere</i>	<i>send away, lose</i>
ad	<i>capere</i>	<i>take</i>		<i>receive, welcome</i>
		<i>come</i>	<i>circumvenire</i>	
		<i>call</i>	<i>convocare</i>	<i>call together</i>
		<i>send</i>	<i>demittere</i>	<i>send down, lower</i>
	<i>facere</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>afficere</i>	<i>treat, afflict</i>
	<i>putare</i>	<i>think</i>	<i>computare</i>	<i>sum up, reckon</i>
		<i>take, snatch</i>	<i>eripere</i>	<i>snatch out</i>
	<i>ruere</i>	<i>rush</i>	<i>irruere</i>	<i>rush in</i>
	<i>venire</i>		<i>invenire</i>	<i>come upon, find</i>
per	<i>facere</i>	<i>make</i>		<i>make thorough, finish</i>

## ► Peregrini ad stagnum *Strangers at the lake*

### Shared endings key

- i second declension : *muli* : nom. pl.; *muli, vini* : gen.
- third declension : dat.
- fifth declension : gen., dat.
- first person, perfect (I have ...)

'Qui sunt illi?' rogavit Paulus.

'Nescio. Numquam eos vidi.'

'Oculus, in aquam, oculus!' Lucia celeriter se immersit in aquam et ambo inter calamos se celaverunt. Mox peregrini ad stagnum advenerunt.

'...Postero die pecora et aurum rapiemus,' inquit quidam. 'Immo,' inquit alius, 'aurum est non rapiendum.... sola pecora. Ecclesiae est aurum. Omnes res rapiendae sunt, praeter aurum et argentum.'

Paulus, voce agnota, attonitus 'Est Pater Ricardus!' exclamavit, 'cellerarius noster qui in nostro monasterio habitat!'

'Ssst!' susurravit Lucia ponens manum ad os eius; quam Paulus basiauit et virgo removit.

'Quid facit Ricardus in hoc loco?' Paulus in animo volutabat. 'Qui sunt socii eius? Mercatores?' Facies hominum videre non poterant; multas voces alias audierunt sed non agnoverunt. Equos virorum quoque bibentes audire poterant. Subito mulus Pauli in silva rudivit.

'Quid est illud?' clamavit quidam. 'Ne timeas,' respondit alter, 'ecce muli in agris.' Nec multo post viri abierunt.

'Mulus tuus est loquax!' inquit Lucia ex aqua resurgens.

'Quo abis? Nonne natare vis?'

'Minime! Illae voces erant Danorum.'

'Illi viri erant Dani? Cum Ricardo? Nonne erravisti?'

'Certa sum. Olim Danos hospites in nostro castello accepimus. Age, illi statim sequendi.'

'Statim? Sed vestes induere debeo.'

'Ergo festina, ne eos amittamus!'

<b>agnosco-ere-ovi-otum</b>	<i>recognize</i>
<b>ambo</b>	<i>both</i>
<b>animus-i [m]</b>	<i>mind</i>
<b>argentum-i [n]</b>	<i>silver</i>
<b>aurum-i [n]</b>	<i>gold</i>
<b>basio-ere-avi</b>	<i>kiss</i>
<b>calamus-i [m]</b>	<i>reed</i>
<b>cellerarius-i [m]</b>	<i>procurator</i>
<b>eos</b>	<i>them</i>
<b>erro-ere-avi</b>	<i>make a mistake</i>
<b>hospes-itis [m]</b>	<i>host, guest</i>
<b>illi</b>	<i>those men</i>
<b>immo</b>	<i>on the contrary</i>
<b>induo-ere</b>	<i>put on</i>
<b>loquax</b>	<i>noisy</i>
<b>mercator-is [m]</b>	<i>trader</i>
<b>ne amittamus</b>	<i>lest we lose</i>
<b>ne timeas</b>	<i>don't be afraid</i>
<b>nescio-ire</b>	<i>do not know</i>
<b>ocius</b>	<i>quick!</i>
<b>olim</b>	<i>once (upon a time)</i>

os, oris [n]	mouth
pecus-oris [n]	herd, flock
postero die	on the next day
quam	which
resurgo-are	reappear
se celo-are-avi	hide oneself
sequendus-a-um	to be followed
socius-i [m]	colleague, associate
voluto-are	ponder, turn

## ► Living Latin

### A hunting moral

In his *Metamorphoses* Ovid recounts many tales from Greek mythology, each one included by virtue of a 'metamorphosis', a change of form. There are characters who turn into trees, into stone, into animals.

The story of Actaeon and Diana is an example of the kind of divine justice dished out by the ancient gods. It was not so much a set of universal moral values which you might conform to or transgress, but rather a personal affair between worshipper and god. Offend the deity and you were in a spot of bother...

- 1 Diana bathes in a forest pool, attended by her nymphs. Meanwhile Actaeon and his hunting friends have decided to rest a while before renewing their sport. He takes a walk through the forest and chances upon the pool.

**Ecce nepos Cadmi dilata parte laborum  
per nemus ignotum non certis passibus errans  
pervenit in lucum: sic illum fata ferebant.  
Qui simul intravit rorantis fontibus antra,  
sicut erant, nudaē viso sua pectora nymphae  
percussere viro subitisque ululatus omne  
implere nemus circumfusaeque Dianam  
corporibus texere suis; tamen altior illis  
ipsa dea est colloque tenuis supereminet omnis.**

*Uh oh! Cadmus' grandson, enjoying a break from hunting makes his way through the unfamiliar wood, uncertain of his course, and reaches the grove: thus the fates guided him. As soon as he stepped into the grotto bedewed with fountain spray, the nymphs saw him and just as they were, naked, beat their breasts, and filling the whole wood with their sudden cries thronged around Diana*



and obscured her with their bodies; the goddess herself, however, was taller than they, and stood out head and shoulders above them all.

- 2 Diana turns the luckless intruder into a stag. He escapes, but sees his reflection in some water.

**'Me miserum!' dicturus erat: vox nulla secuta est!**  
**Ingemit: vox illa fuit, lacrimaeque per ora**  
**non sua fluxerunt; mens tantum pristina mansit.**  
**Quid faciat? Repetat-ne domum et regalia tecta**  
**an lateat silvis? Pudor hoc, timor impedit illud.**  
**Dum dubitat, videre canes, primique Melampus**  
**Ichneutesque sagax latratu signa dedere.**

*'I'm done for ...' he tried to say, but no words followed! He groaned – the limit of his speech – and tears flowed down his strange face; only his mind remained from before. What should he do? Make his way back home to the royal palace, or hide in the woods? He is afraid to try one, and ashamed of the other. While he dithered his hounds caught sight of him: Melampus and keen-scented Ichneutes were first to give the signal with their cry.*

- 3 Actaeon's hounds surround him, eager to finish him off.

**Heu! Famulos fugit ipse suos. Clamare libebat:**  
**'Actaeon ego sum: dominum cognoscite vestrum!'**  
**Verba animo desunt; resonat latratibus aether.**

*Oh no! He flees his own retainers. He wanted to shout: 'I am Actaeon: recognize your own master!' But words fail his will; and the air resounds with their baying.*

(Metamorphoses iii, 174–82, 201–5, 229–31)

## Revision

- Write out all the endings, singular and plural, in all cases:
  - gradus, gradus; corpus, corporis; monachus, monachi;
  - dies, dici; miles, militis; sagitta, sagittae
- Translate into Latin:
  - The maiden had never swum in the pond.
  - After much food had been devoured (*use an ablative absolute*), the pilgrims left the monastery.
  - We had found neither food nor water, but we never lost hope.
  - The students sitting on the steps of the church were listening to the verses of Augustine.
  - The monks had written all the books by hand.

# 15

**audire est  
intelligere**  
to hear is to understand

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- hic, ille, is
- se, ipse
- the passive
- and find out more about  
Latin in 'All's fair in  
philosophy, love and war'

### Third person pronouns: *ille*, *hic* and *is*

Latin has several equivalents of the third person pronoun (*he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, *him*, *her*, *them*):

<i>he</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>it</i>	
<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	( <i>this one here</i> )
<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	( <i>that one there</i> )
<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	

In classical Latin, *is* is a less emphatic pronoun than *ille* 'that person' or *hic* 'this person'. This distinction grows weaker in post-classical Latin, when all three pronouns are almost interchangeable. See pp. 196–7 for all pronoun endings.

The equivalent of our 'it' may also be masculine or feminine in Latin, according to the gender of the noun it represents, e.g. *ea* (f) for *silva* a wood.

### Practice (i)

- 1 Choose a noun to replace a pronoun, and translate:

*vinum, ancillarum, Luciae, monachi*

- (a) *Vultus eius tristis erat.*  
 (b) *Cibus harum a Benedicto devoratus est.*  
 (c) *Illi in monasterio habitant.*  
 (d) *Id ab abbate desideratum est.*

- 2 Replace each underlined word with the correct form of the pronoun in brackets, and translate:

- (a) *Filia Comitis Karoli in castello habitat.* (*ille*)  
 (b) *Abbatissa in ecclesia cum Lucia orabat.* (*hic*)  
 (c) *Paulus semper cibum mulo dabat.* (*is*)  
 (d) *Peregrini in silva cum monachis visi sunt.* (*ille / hic*)

### *Hic, ille* and *is* as adjectives

*Hic, ille* and *is* as described above are pronouns, words used in place of nouns. If, however, one is used with a noun, not in place of it, it is an adjective:

*hic mulus*  
*illa silva*

*this mule*  
*that wood*

*Hic* can also mean 'here':

*hic vivo, hic moriar*

*here I live, here may I die*

A development in later Latin is the use of *ille* as a definite article (*the*):

**bonus ille Thomas**                      *the good Thomas*

*Ille* is the ancestor of the words for both *s/he* and *the* in the Romance languages:

	French	Spanish	Italian
<i>s/he</i>	<i>elle, il</i>	<i>ella, él</i>	<i>lei, lui</i>
<i>the (m/f)</i>	<i>le, la</i>	<i>el, la</i>	<i>il, la</i>

## Practice (ii)

1 Translate using *hic, haec, hoc*, etc.:

- (a) this wood
- (b) these perfumes
- (c) of these students

2 Translate using *ille, illa, illud*, etc.:

- (a) that mistress
- (b) those songs
- (c) I see that mule

3 Translate using *is, ea, id*, etc.:

- (a) that letter
- (b) with those monks
- (c) that is

## **se and ipse: himself, herself, themselves**

One kind of the *-self* pronouns is reflexive, i.e. it refers back to the subject (Latin: *se*):

**Lucia se celat.**

*Lucia hides herself.*

**Captivi se liberant.**

*The captives free themselves.*

There are only four cases: *se* (accusative or ablative), *sui* (genitive) and *sibi* (dative). There is no separate plural form as *se* can be either singular or plural (or masculine or feminine) – it depends on the verb's subject.

The other kind of *-self* pronoun is used for emphasis (Latin *ipse*):

**Abbas ipse Ricardum vidit.**

*The abbot himself saw*

*Richard.*

**Luciam ipsam sed non  
patrem amo.**

*I love Lucia herself, but not  
her father.*

Occasionally ipse is used similarly to is, ea, id, i.e. as an ordinary third person pronoun (*s/he, him, her, etc.*) – see p. 197 for all the forms.

### Practice (iii)

Fill each gap with the correct form of *se* or *ipse*:

- (a) *Mulus in stagno \_\_\_\_ vidit et attonitus est.*



- (b) *Abbatissa \_\_\_\_ sarcinas portabat.*

### ► In dumis se celant *They hide in the thickets*

Peregrini per silvam ad monasterium iter faciebant, sequentibus furtim Lucia et Paulo. Mox peregrini prope monasterium constituerunt, et aliis Ricardus ecclesiam monstravit. Itaque Lucia et Paulus ad eos audiendos se in dumis celaverunt.

'Ecce ecclesia,' vocem Ricardi audire potuerunt, 'Nunc abite quod in hoc loco estis non conspiciendi. Valete.'

'Ille est proditor,' murmuravit Paulus, 'Pater Ricardus est proditor. Malus, turpis, ignavus, saevus, crudelis, scelestus ...'

'Sst,' iterum illa ad os eius manum posuit, iterum eam Paulus basiauit.

'Desine! Cave ne peregrini nos audiant.'

'Quid est agendum?' rogavit Paulus.

'Pete fideles amicos quibus omnia referas. Cui monachorum credis?'

'Magistro Stephano, qui est aliquando austerus sed vero benignus.'

'Hulc ergo refer; i, in monasterium festinal! Eho, sistel! Mulus ducendus.' His dictis Lucia in equum ascendit.

'Et tu,' respondit ille, 'Quid in animo habes?'

'Ego Ricardum observabo. Nunc abundum!' Lucia eum cum mulo ad monasterium lente euntem spectavit; deinde ipsa, equo citato, abiit.

<b>abite</b>	<i>depart, go away!</i>
<b>aliquando</b>	<i>sometimes</i>
<b>audiant</b>	<i>(they) may hear</i>
<b>benignus-a-um</b>	<i>kind</i>
<b>cave ne...</b>	<i>be careful lest...</i>
<b>cito-are-avi-atum</b>	<i>rouse / stir</i>
<b>consisto-ere-stiti</b>	<i>stop</i>
<b>credo-ere [+dat.]</b>	<i>believe, trust</i>
<b>cui [dat.]</b>	<i>whom</i>
<b>dumus-i [m]</b>	<i>thicket</i>
<b>euntem</b>	<i>him as he went</i>
<b>fidelis</b>	<i>loyal</i>
<b>il</b>	<i>go!</i>
<b>in animo habeo-ere</b>	<i>have in mind, intend</i>
<b>iter facio-ere</b>	<i>make one's way</i>
<b>observo-are</b>	<i>watch</i>
<b>peto-ere</b>	<i>seek</i>
<b>pono-ere-sui-situm</b>	<i>place, put</i>
<b>proditor-is [m]</b>	<i>traitor</i>
<b>quibus</b>	<i>to whom</i>
<b>refer</b>	<i>tell, report!</i>
<b>referas</b>	<i>you may report</i>
<b>scelestus-a-um</b>	<i>wicked</i>
<b>sequens</b>	<i>following</i>
<b>siste</b>	<i>stop!</i>

## Passive forms

So far almost all the verbs you have met have been active, e.g.:

**Mulus silvam spectat.**

*The mule watches the wood.*

**Silva mulum spectat.**

*The wood watches the mule.*

In the passive voice, the verb is not a 'doing' word but 'done-to'. If you want to make a verb passive and keep the same meaning, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive one:

Silva a mulo spectatur.

*The wood is watched by the mule.*

Mulus a silva spectatur.

*The mule is watched by the wood.*

The subject of the active verb has become an 'agent' in the ablative, while the previous object is now the subject. When a verb is passive, it is the subject, not the object, which is on the receiving end. If a verb is active, it's in the active 'voice', if passive, then passive voice.

The passive form of the third person, singular or plural, has -ur added to the active ending, whether present, future or imperfect.

## Practice (iv)

Fill in the gaps:

Active		Passive	
s/he watches	spectat	spectatur	s/he is watched
they were watching	spectabant	spectabantur	they were being watched
s/he will love	amabit		s/he will be loved
they will see		videbuntur	they will be seen
s/he was hearing		audiebatur	
		capietur	s/he will be captured

You have already encountered the passive in both gerundives (e.g. *agendus to be done*) and the past participle (e.g. *actus having been done*). You have also met the perfect passive with *esse*:

duxit	s/he led (active)
ductus est	he was led (passive)
amavit	s/he loved (active)
amata est	she was loved (passive)

## Practice (v)

1 Fill the gaps with the corresponding active or passive forms:

Active		Passive	
she sent	misit	missa est	she was sent
they led		ducti sunt	
he heard			he was heard
she captured			she was captured
he advised			he was advised

- 2 Rewrite each sentence making the verb passive, and translate (and look out for singular subjects being replaced by plural ones, and vice versa):

e.g. *Discipuli librum legunt* (*the students are reading the book*)  
*Liber a discipulis legitur* (*the book is being read by the students*)

- (a) *Pater Ricardus discipulos in schola castigat.*
- (b) *Mulus ex oppido omnes sarcinas portabat.*
- (c) *Augustinus amicis carmen Catulli recitavit.*
- (d) *Paulus virginem matri dicentem vidit.*

- 3 Rewrite each sentence making the verb active, and translate:

- (a) *Cibus a Benedicto devoratus est.*
- (b) *Virgo in silva a Paulo est visa.*
- (c) *Historia monasterii a monachis narrabitur.*
- (d) *Corpus in horto a Danis sepultum est.*

## ▣ **Credere est intellegere** *To believe is to understand*

*Discipuli in schola theologiam a Stephano docebantur.*

'O discipuli, non quaero intellegere ut credam, sed credo ut intellegam. Praeterea,' inquit Stephanus, 'philosophiam per dialecticam scimus sed veritatem ipsam agnoscimus gratia Dei. Scribitis-ne? Nunc est scribendum.'

'Veritatem-ne autem agnoscere possumus per dialecticam?' rogavit Augustinus.

'Minime,' respondit magister. 'Cur tu semper contradicis, Augustine? Maioribus numquam credis?'

'Nonne autem, ut dixit Socrates, homo veritatem per dialecticam agnoscere potest?'

'Cave ne blasphemus,' admonuit Stephanus, 'Graeci quidem sapientes erant, sed nos sapientiores sumus quod Dei sapientiam illorum eruditioni additam habemus. Veritatem iam habemus. Per veritatem opus Dei in terra revelatur. Nunc est scribendum: credere est scire, scire est intellegere, intellegere est credere....'

'Videre est spectare bellissimam!' exclamavit Augustinus.

'Quid dixisti?' rogavit Stephanus.

'Illic est amica Pauli,' exclamavit Augustinus per fenestram spectans.

'O Augustine, nisi tacebis, Pater Ricardus ad vos docendos reveniet.'

'Ibi quoque ipse est Paulus! Ducens mulum in monasterium,' inquit Augustinus.



'Paulus? Num Paulus iam adest?' inquit Stephanus ad fenestram festinans. 'Eheu, ecce coquus est iratus. Paulus nihil emisse videtur.'

Mox Paulus e culina fugiens in scholam irruit et Stephano 'Pater, Pater!' clamavit, 'Pater Stephane ... Pater Ricardus ... Pater Ricardus ...' inquit Paulus balbus.

'Pater Ricardus non adest. Quid tibi cum Patre Ricardo est? Dic mihi.'

<b>addo-ere-idi-ŭm</b>	<i>add</i>
<b>bellissimus-a-um</b>	<i>most beautiful</i>
<b>contradico-ere</b>	<i>contradict</i>
<b>dialectica-ae [f]</b>	<i>discussion, argument</i>
<b>dic</b>	<i>tell, say</i>
<b>emisse</b>	<i>to have bought</i>
<b>eruditio-nis [f]</b>	<i>learning</i>
<b>gratia-ae [f]</b>	<i>favour, grace</i>
<b>ibi</b>	<i>there</i>
<b>intellego-ere</b>	<i>understand</i>
<b>maiores-um</b>	<i>bettors, ancestors</i>
<b>praeterea</b>	<i>besides</i>
<b>quaero-ere</b>	<i>seek</i>
<b>quid tibi .... est</b>	<i>what is your problem ...</i>
<b>sapientia-ae [f]</b>	<i>wisdom</i>
<b>sapientiores</b>	<i>wiser</i>
<b>ut credam</b>	<i>that I may believe</i>
<b>veritas-tatis [f]</b>	<i>truth</i>
<b>videtur</b>	<i>is seen, seems</i>

## ► Living Latin

### All's fair in philosophy, love and war

- 1 Cicero was inspired by the philosophy of Socrates and other Greeks:

**O vitae philosophia dux, o virtutis indagatrix expultrixque vitiorum!**

(Tusculan Disputations v, 5)

*O Philosophy, guide of life, you bring us to right and rid us of wrongs.*

- 2 Propertius' philosophy was guided by hedonism. A good life meant a good time:

Qualem si cuncti cuperent decurrere vitam  
 et pressi multo membra lacere mero,  
 non ferrum crudele neque esset bellica navis,  
 nec nostra Actiacum verteret ossa mare,  
 nec totiens propriis circum oppugnata triumphis  
 lassata foret crines solvere Roma suos.  
 Haec certe merito poterunt laudare minores:  
 laesserunt nullos proelia nostra deos.

(Elegies ii, 15, 41–8)

*I wish everyone desired to lead this life and relax their limbs heavy with draughts of wine, then there'd be no cruel steel, no warship, and the bones of our people would not be churned about on the sea of Actium, and Rome would not be overwhelmed with so many victories over her own subjects and be weary of loosening her hair in grief. Truly will this deserve posterity's praise: our skirmishes have not injured any gods.*

- 3 Ovid saw common ground between lover and soldier. Both may suffer from battle-fatigue:

Quis nisi vel miles vel amans et frigora noctis  
 et denso mixtas perferet imbre nives?  
 Mittitur infestos alter speculator in hostes:  
 in rivale oculos alter, ut hoste, tenet.  
 Ille graves urbes, hic duras limen amicae  
 obsidet. Hic portas frangit, at ille fores.

(Amores i, 9, 15–20)

*Who but a soldier or lover will endure the chill of night and snow and driving rain? As one is sent to spy on the dangerous enemy, the other keeps an eye on his rival, as he would on an enemy. The soldier camps outside hostile cities, the lover outside the door of an unfeeling girlfriend. The former breaks down gates, the latter the door.*

- 4 The heat of battle brings a case of passion-fatigue for Tibullus:

Hic mihi servitium video dominamque paratam:  
 iam mihi, libertas illa paterna, vale.  
 Servitium sed triste datur, teneorque catenis,  
 et numquam misero vincula remittit Amor,  
 et seu quid merui seu nil peccavimus, urit.  
 Uror, io, remove saeva puella faces.

(Elegies ii, 4, 1–6)

Here I see enslavement and mistress ready for me. Now farewell, freedom, which was my family's right, farewell. Bleak slavery lies ahead, and I am held in chains. Love is never one to loosen a wretched prisoner's knots. He burns me whether I've deserved it or done no wrong. I'm on fire! Oh! You cruel girl, take away those brands.

## Revision

1 Identify the past participles of these verbs, add the right endings, and translate:

- (a) *Multae epistulae Luciae ab Augustino (scribo-ere) sunt.*
- (b) *Monasterium a peregrinis (relinquo-ere) est.*
- (c) *Corpus monachi (sepelio-ire) est.*
- (d) *Libri in bibliotheca (pono-ere) sunt.*

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Soon the students will free themselves.
- (b) Do the monks themselves teach? Are they taught to teach?
- (c) Paul and Lucia were seen walking out of the wood (*if there is a 'mixed gender plural' the masculine tends to prevail*).
- (d) Paul hid himself in the pond as the pilgrims approached (*'as... approached': the present participle of adeo-ire is irregular: adiens, then adeunt-*).
- (e) Many beasts were captured by the maiden herself.
- (f) The oxen were being guarded by an army of Danes.

# 16

## **quis in monasterio conspirat?**

**who is plotting in the monastery?**

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- **the subjunctive**
- **wishes and commands**
- **ut, ne, cum**

• **and find out more about  
the Roman historian,  
Tacitus**

## More about verbs: the subjunctive (present)

Verbs can be categorized in several different ways. There's the *tense*, (present, future, etc.), the *person* (who's doing it, 'I', 'you', 'he', etc.), the *voice* (i.e. active or passive), and now finally what linguists call the *mood*.

So far we have been dealing with the indicative mood, that is to say dealing with actual actions, things which happen (or have happened or are about to happen).

The subjunctive mood deals with potential, with hope, with what might happen (or might have happened). There are four tenses, active and passive. The endings are common across all five conjugations with the exception of the present subjunctive:

amare	monere	mittere
am-em	mone-am	mitt-am
am-es	mone-as	mitt-as
am-et	mone-at	mitt-at
am-emus	mone-amus	mitt-amus
am-etis	mone-atis	mitt-atis
am-ent	mone-ant	mitt-ant
capere	audire	
capi-am	audi-am	
capi-as	audi-as	
capi-at	audi-at	
capi-amus	audi-amus	
capi-atis	audi-atis	
capi-ant	audi-ant	

The second, third, fourth and fifth columns all have the same endings, but verbs in the first column (-are) have an 'e' in place of the 'a'.

## Practice (i)

Fill the gaps:

Present indicative		Present subjunctive	
we live	vivimus	vivamus	may we live
s/he (it) stands	stat		may s/he (it) stand
we love		amemus	may we love
		ignoscas	may you forgive
s/he is careful	cavet		may s/he be careful
we rejoice		gaudeamus	
	laudamus		
		bibet	
	taces		may you be quiet

## Orders and encouragement (imperative)

The most direct way to tell someone what to do is to use the imperative:

(to one person)

ama!

monet!

mitte!

audi

cape

(to more than one)

amate!

monete!

mittite!

audite!

capite!

Audite me, o molesti  
discipuli!

Sede!

*Listen to me, you lazy  
students!*

*Sit!*

The imperative is the most direct, urgent and potentially offensive form of encouragement. In ancient times no doubt it was the standard idiom for addressing menials, dependants and children, but perhaps unwise for anyone old enough, big enough – and not hampered by the bonds of servitude – to clock you one. The subjunctive was a more polite idiom of encouragement, expressing a wish rather than an order:

Audiat me, o amici.  
Sedeas.

*May you hear me, friends.  
May you be seated.*

## Practice (ii)

Choose the appropriate form:

- (a) (Festinate/Festinetis),  
o miseri servi!



- (b) Si vobis placet, in ecclesiam  
(festinate/festinetis),  
o milites.

(c) O discipuli,  
(tacete/taceatis).



(d) O Abbatissa,  
(tace/taceas).

## ► Lucia in trabibus celata *Lucia hidden in the beams*

### Shared endings key

- e(n)t present : mone(n)t (second conjugation)  
future : mitte(n)t, audie(n)t, capie(n)t (third, fourth and mixed conjugations)  
present subjunctive : ame(n)t (first conjugation)
- a(n)t present : ama(n)t (first conjugation)  
imperfect : -ba(n)t (all verbs)  
pluperfect : -era(n)t (all verbs)  
pres. subj. : monea(n)t, mitta(n)t, audia(n)t, capia(n)t (second, third, fourth and mixed conjugations)

Interea Lucia, Ricardum in monasterium euntem observans, in claustrum tectum ascenderat ubi in pueritia saepe se celabat; Comes Karolus enim eam matremque ad monasterium adducere solebat. Despiciens igitur Lucia de trabibus Ricardum solum sedentem videre poterat. Tandem aliquis ad Ricardum adlit.

'Ubi sunt nostri hospites?' inquit advena. 'Salvi-ne?'

'Salvi sunt,' respondit alter.

'Omnia-ne parata sunt?'

'Ita vero, Domine Abba.'

Lucia est obstupefacta. Abbas! Omnia verba eorum audire non poterat quod duo monachi susurrabant. 'Tace!' dicebat abbas.

'Advenit aliquis, ergo in ecclesiam abi...' et Ricardus abiit. 'Ah Pater Stephane, salve.'

'Te saluto, Domine Abba,' respondit Stephanus, 'Ignoscas mi, sed tibi nuntios graves refero, mirabiles quidem, sed veros.'

'Quos nuntios dicis? Dic mihi, Stephane.'

'Unus ex discipulis meis, puer sapiens, honestus, fidelis ...'

'Quis ex tuis discipulis?'

'Paulus. Hodie cum ad oppidum ambularet, conspirantes in silva Danos conspexit ex quibus unum agnovit. Pater Ricardus in silva cum Danis!'

'Pater Ricardus in silva? Hodie? Sed Ricardus non est Danus. Ille puer elephantum ex musca facit.'

'Ille autem cum Danis erat.'

'Discipulo erranti credis, Pater?' inquit abbas. 'Nonne autem Paulus erat ille discipulus qui frustra filiam Comitissae Karoli amabat? Ignoscas mihi sed puer fervidus amore est,' risit abbas. 'Ille Veneris discipulus non Christi esse videtur – eho Magister? Nos ne fabulas eius audiamus, sed tu eum saepius verberes. *Percute puerum tuum virga, ut dixit sanctus Benedictus, et liberabis animam eius a morte.* Regula XXVIII.'

'Ut vis, Domine, ut vis. Rumorem tamen ad te referendum esse putavi.'

'Sane, Pater. Ecce, nunc Ricardus adit: eum ipsum interrogemus ... Pater Ricarde, adsis.'

'Semper tibi pareo libens, o Domine...'

Lucia adhuc in trabibus immota omnia, quae homines infra dicebant, audire non poterat. Mox dicere desierunt et Stephanus Ricardusque abierunt.

abi	go away!
advena-ae [f]	newcomer
anima-ae [f]	soul
claustrum-i [n]	cloister
conspiro-are	conspire, plot
credo-ere [+dat.]	believe, trust
cum ... ambularet	when he was walking
despicio-ere	look down
dic	tell
euntem (iens, euntis)	going
fervidus-a-um	burning, impetuous
frustra	in vain, to no avail
honestus-a-um	decent, honourable
immotus-a-um	stationary
infra	below



libens	gladly
musca-ae [f]	fly
nuntii-orum [m]	news
obstupefactus-a-um	stupefied
pareo-ere [+dat.]	be obedient to
percutio-ere	strike, beat
pueritia-ae [f]	childhood
saepius	more often
salve	hello
salvus-a-um	safe
sane	certainly
trabs-bis [f]	beam
virga-ae [f]	rod

## Ut and ne

Ut with the indicative usually means *as*, or *when*. With the subjunctive ut is often used to express a wish or intention (negative ne).

## Practice (iii)

Pair the Latin sentences with the corresponding English ones:

Cave ne audiant. *May you be quiet!*

Credo ut intellegam. *If only you'd be quiet!*

Ne silvam timeas. *If only he'd believe us!*

Taceas! *Do not be afraid of the wood.*

Ut nobis credat! *Careful lest they hear.*

Ut taceas! *I believe so that I may understand.*

The words which ut and ne introduce are often part of a larger sentence. The customary English equivalents are *that*, *so that*, or *in order that*:

Monent eum ut nobis credat.

*They advise him to believe us (that he should believe us).*

Monent eum ne abbati credat.

*They advise him not to believe the abbot (that he should not believe the abbot).*

In dumis se celant ne a Danis videantur.

*They hide themselves in the thickets so that they may not be seen by the Danes.*

Sometimes *ut* + subjunctive introduces a result or consequence:

**Tam celeriter currebant *ut*  
ad ecclesiam ante noctem  
pervenirent.**

*They used to run so fast that  
they would reach the church  
before nightfall.*

## Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive

The three most used tenses are: the present, the imperfect, and the pluperfect.

The imperfect subjunctive is easy to recognize because the stem is the verb's infinitive. The pluperfect has the ordinary stem of the perfect with 'iss' as part of the ending:

### Imperfect subjunctive

amare	-m	amarem
monere	-s	moneres
mittere	-t	mitteret
audire	-mus	audiremus
capere	-tis	caperetis
esse	-ent	essent

### Pluperfect subjunctive

amav-i	-issem	amavissem
monu-i	-isses	monuisses
mis-i	-isset	misisset
audiv-i	-issemus	audivissemus
cep-i	-issetis	cepissetis
fu-i	-issent	fuisissent

It helps to be able to recognize a subjunctive; for instance the meaning of *ut* varies according to whether it's used with the indicative or subjunctive:

**...*ut credimus***

*as we believe*

**...*ut credamus***

*so that we may believe*

For all the forms of the subjunctive, including those of *sum*, *esse*, see p. 203.

## Practice (iv)

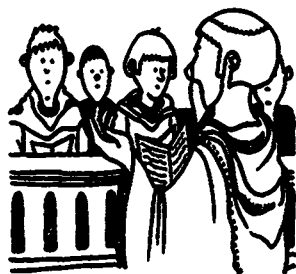
Choose the correct form and translate:

(a) Bibo *ut* (intellegam/intellego).





- (b) Lucia in stagnum se  
immersit ut se  
(celaret/celabit).



- (c) Discipuli, ut Stephanus  
(dicit/dicat), theologiam  
docentur ut opus Dei  
(intelligunt/intelligent).



- (d) Augustinus nos monuit ut  
carmina sua (audiremus/  
audiamus).

## Cum

The preposition *cum* *with* is followed by a noun in the ablative. *Cum* is also used as a conjunction, meaning *when* (sometimes *since* and occasionally *although*). It is usually followed by a verb in the subjunctive:

Paulus, cum in silva  
ambularet, monachorum  
voces audivit.

Lucia, cum abbatem in  
claustrum vidisset, attonita  
erat.

*When Paul was walking in the  
wood he heard the voices of  
the monks.*

*When Lucia had seen the abbot  
in the cloister she was  
astonished.*

Interea Paulus, cum Stephanus ut abbatem quaereret scholam reliquisset, ipse abiit ut Luciam inveniret. Paulus Augustinum et ceteros subvenire volentes ut manerent in schola monuit, ne a Ricardo aut consociis viderentur. Nec multo post Paulus, cum per monasterium solus ambularet, campanas ad monachos in ecclesiam convocandos resonantes audivit. Itaque, cum ipse adesse in ecclesia deberet, furtim e claustro in hortum ibat, ubi mulum plaustrum vinctum vidit. 'Io mule, quo nunc vadis? Quo hoc plaustrum trahis? Quid hic habemus?' Deinde Paulus cum in plastro omnes res quae in ecclesia erant custodiendae conspexisset valde attonitus erat 'Mehercule! Cur haec in plastro?' murmuravit.

Prope plaustrum erat magna sarcina. 'Eheu!' gemuit ille, 'Vae! Vae! Miserrimum Stephanum!' corpore magistri caesi in sarcina invento. 'Propter me, o Magister, trucidatus es. Ut in schola remansisses!' flebat iuvenis. 'Statim abbati ut omnia referam ibo,' et gemitu in monasterium effugit.

<b>caedo-ere, cecidi, caesum</b>	<i>kill, cut</i>
<b>campana-ae [f]</b>	<i>bell</i>
<b>consocius-i [m]</b>	<i>associate</i>
<b>furtim</b>	<i>secretly</i>
<b>miserrimus-a-um</b>	<i>most wretched</i>
<b>plaustrum-i [n]</b>	<i>cart, wagon</i>
<b>remaneo-ere-si-sum</b>	<i>remain</i>
<b>traho-ere</b>	<i>pull, drag</i>
<b>trucido-are-avi-atum</b>	<i>slaughter</i>
<b>vae</b>	<i>alas, woe</i>
<b>valde</b>	<i>very much</i>

## ► **Living Latin**

### **Friends, Romans ... and family**

Of the Roman historians, Tacitus is perhaps the most compelling. His contemporaries tell us he was a lawyer, and a good one (unlike Virgil who could not cope with the forum and retreated to a quieter life of reading and writing). His work is full of rhetorical cleverness, of withering irony interspersed with mischievous asides and occasional blasts of front-on invective.

- 1 After poisoning his stepbrother, Britannicus, Nero decided it was his mother's turn to die. Agrippina had been instrumental in helping Nero to power, and was almost as ruthless; but she later lost influence over him. First there was a botched job with a collapsing boat, from which she escaped to her villa. Then, after she sent Agerinus to Nero to tell him she had survived an attempt on her life, Nero confirmed her worst suspicions by sending assassins to finish her off.

**Cubiculo modicum lumen inerat et ancillarum una, magis ac magis anxia Agrippina quod nemo a filio ac ne Agerinus quidem: allam fore laetae rei faciem; nunc solitudinem ac repentinos strepitus et extremi mali indicia. Absente dehinc ancilla 'tu quoque me deseris' prolocuta respicit Anicetum trierarcho Herculeio et Obarito centurione classario comitatum: ac, si visendum venisset, refotam renuntiaret, sin facinus patraturus, nihil se de filio credere; non imperatum parricidium. Circumsistunt lectum percussores et prior trierarchus fusti caput eius adflixit. Iam in mortem centurioni ferrum destringenti protendens uterum 'ventrem feri' exclamavit multisque vulneribus confecta est.**

(Annals xiv, 8)

*The room was dimly lit with only one maid for company. Agrippina became more and more fretful – no news from her son, no sign even of Agerinus. If all were well things would look otherwise; now there was loneliness and a sudden din, which pointed towards extreme danger. Her maid got up to go and she started to speak 'You're leaving me too...' when she saw Anicetus and the commander Herculeius and warrant officer Obaritus. 'If you have come to visit me,' she said, 'you may report that I am recovering. But if you are here to kill me, I believe my son has nothing to do with it – he would not order his mother's death!' The assassins stood round her couch. First the captain hit her on the head with a staff. Then as the lieutenant drew his sword to finish her off, she pointed to her womb and shouted 'Strike here!' After several blows she died.*

- 2 Tacitus' picture of humanity is a desolate grey purpled by the lust of ambition, weakness or cruelty. The story of Octavia is an oasis of human innocence and virtue, and her murder shows to what lengths a cruel tyrant will go. Historians might have given their attention to less melodramatic material, such as the rise or fall in interest rates, achievements of engineering, or social statistics garnered from different corners of the empire – but this never occurred to the writers, or their readers.

Octavia was the sister of Britannicus, and the daughter of the emperor Claudius. She was also Nero's wife. She was murdered in her twentieth year to make way for Nero's mistress, Poppaea.

*Restringitur vinculis venaeque eius per omnis artus exolvuntur; et quia pressus pavore sanguis tardius labebatur, praefervidi balnei vapore enecatur. Additurque atrocior saevitia quod caput amputatum latumque in urbem Poppaea vidit.*

(Annals xiv, 64)

*She was bound and veins in all her limbs were cut; and then because the flow of blood was checked by her panic, she was put in a very hot bath and finished off by its stifling heat. More appalling cruelty was to follow: her severed head was taken to Rome for Poppaea to see.*

## Revision

- 1 Change the underlined clauses into ablative absolutes without significantly changing the meaning:

e.g. Augustinus cum virginem conspexisset diu per fenestram spectabat.

Answer: Augustinus virgine conspecta diu per fenestram spectabat.

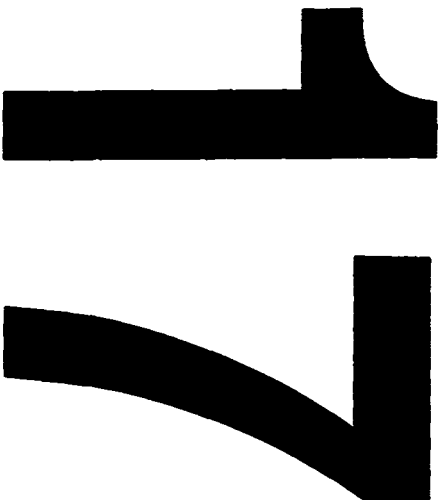
- (a) Mulus cum sarcinas omnes vidisset gemuit.
- (b) Paulus cum Ricardum audivisset in monasterium festinavit.
- (c) Stephanus cum corpus amici sepelivisset in ecclesiam abiit.
- (d) Coquus cum cibum devoravisset in silvam ambulavit.

- 2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) May they capture all the Danes!
- (b) May the abbot not see your book of poems, Augustine!
- (c) Drink the wine, friends! May everyone drink the wine!
- (d) The abbot advised him to leave the monastery (that he should leave – ut + imperfect subjunctive).

- 3 Write out the:

- (a) present tense of gaudeo-ere;
- (b) future tense of scribo-ere;
- (c) present subjunctive of laudo-are.



# **peior quam diabolus**

worse than the devil

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- more passive forms
- deponent verbs
- *more* and *most*
- and find out more about  
the philosopher Boethius

## More passive forms

The third persons of the present, future and imperfect passive have -ur added to the active ending. Other passive forms are on pp. 201-2.

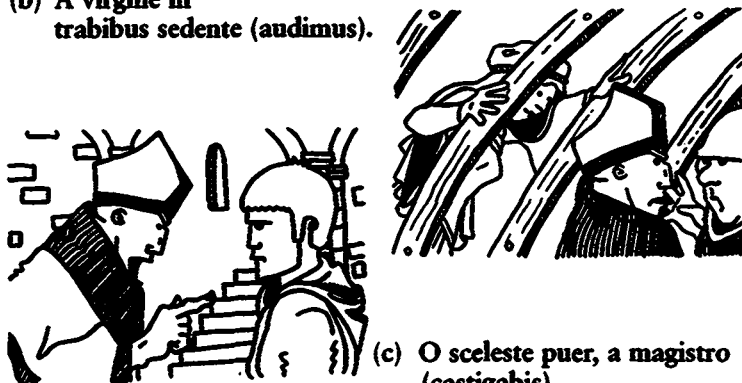
### Practice (i)

Identify the corresponding *passive* form of the bracketed verb and translate:

- (a) Me felicem!  
a mea domina (laudo).



- (b) A virgine in  
trabibus sedente (audimus).



- (c) O scelestus puer, a magistro  
(castigabis).

## Deponent verbs: passive verbs with active meanings

There are quite a large number of verbs which have passive endings, but are active in meaning. These are called 'deponent' verbs. In this list of some of the more common deponent verbs, note the three principal parts, not four, as the past participle is part of the perfect form:



Present	Infinitive	Perfect
<i>sequor</i> / follow	<i>sequi</i> to follow	<i>secutus-a sum</i> / (have) followed
<i>loquor</i> / speak	<i>loqui</i> to speak	<i>locutus-a sum</i> / (have) spoke(n)
<i>progredior</i> / advance	<i>progredi</i> to advance	<i>progressus-a sum</i> / (have) advanced
<i>miror</i> / admire, wonder at	<i>mirari</i> to admire	<i>miratus-a sum</i> / (have) admired

These verbs should be translated like active ones, despite their passive endings.

## Practice (ii)

Identify the correct form of the verb in the tense as directed, and translate:

- (a) Lucia Ricardum in monasterium (*sequor*, *sequi*, *secutus sum*).  
*perfect*



- (b) Omnes homines mea carmina (*miror*, *mirari*, *miratus sum*).  
*future*

Their passive form but active meaning extends to past participles:

*secutus-a-um* *having followed* ~~not~~ *having been followed*  
*miratus-a-um* *having admired* ~~not~~ *having been admired*

But gerundives of deponent verbs remain passive, like other verbs:

*sequendus-a-um* *to-be-followed*  
*mirandus-a-um* *to-be-admired*

**Shared endings key**

-or third declension nominative: stupor, amor, etc.  
passive first person ('I ...')

Paulus igitur, Lucia in trabibus adhuc celata, in claustrum irruit ut abbatem quaereret, 'Pater, Pater,' exanimatus clamans, 'Pater Abba! Lucia vocem eius audire poterat et anxiosa erat.

'Quid est tibi, puer?' rogavit abbas.

'Stephanus est mortuus.'

'Deliras.'

'Sincerus vero loquor!'

'O stulte puer! Cur semper vanis de somniis loqueris? Sed tibi iam pro certo dico: Pater Stephanus nuper abiit et in ecclesiam ingressus est. Patrem Ricardum ceterosque in ecclesiam ad vespertas parandas sequebatur.'

'Ricardum?'

'Ita vero.'

'Pater, si tibi placet, e fenestro specta ut sarcinam videas quae corpus Stephani continet – in pace requiescat.'

'Nullam sarcinam videre possum.'

'Sequere me, Pater, ut eam ipse videas.'

Haud multo post duo homines redierunt Paulo dicente, 'Crede mihi, o Domine, corpus Stephani illa in sarcina fuerat!'

'Iam satis rumorum. Hoc tempore nos in ecclesia, ut vespertas dicamus, adesse debemus. Tu, o puer, amore es captus. Ah, ecce, Pater Ricarde,' inquit abbas adveniens Ricardo. 'Pater Ricarde, gravis in hoc discipulo stupor esse videtur; itaque ad medicum statim est ducendus.'

'Libenter eum ducam, mi Domine,' respondit Ricardus.

'Immo! vera dico,' clamavit Paulus.

'Puer sane est inops animi.'

Subito saeviens, furiosissima, exanimataque, irruit Lucia.

<b>contineo-ere</b>	<i>contain, hold</i>
<b>deliro-are-avi</b>	<i>be silly, insane</i>
<b>exanimatus-a-um</b>	<i>breathless</i>
<b>haud</b>	<i>not</i>
<b>ingredior-i, ingressus sum</b>	<i>enter</i>
<b>inops animi</b>	<i>out of his mind</i>

<b>libenter</b>	<i>gladly</i>
<b>medicus-i [m]</b>	<i>doctor</i>
<b>nuper</b>	<i>recently</i>
<b>pro certo</b>	<i>for certain</i>
<b>saevio-ire</b>	<i>rage</i>
<b>sequere</b>	<i>follow!</i>
<b>somnium-i [n]</b>	<i>dream, fantasy</i>
<b>stultus-a-um</b>	<i>foolish</i>
<b>stupor-is [m]</b>	<i>senselessness</i>
<b>vanus-a-um</b>	<i>empty, false</i>

### Comparative adjectives: 'more ...'

An adjective qualifies a noun. Sometimes an adjective is used to make a comparison between two nouns: 'the dog is **bigger** than the cat'. This form of an adjective is called the comparative, and the English adjective either ends '-er' (**bigger**) or is preceded by 'more' - 'Latin is **more exciting** than space travel'. The Latin equivalent of the comparative form has the syllable 'ior' in most endings. See maior on p. 198 for all the forms. The Latin for 'than' is *quam*.

### Practice (iii)

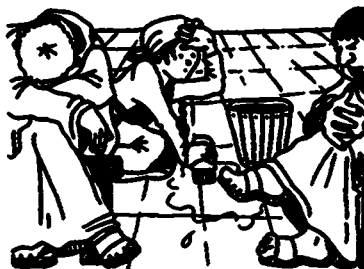
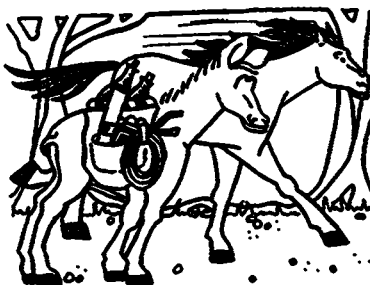
1 Match legends to pictures and translate:

(a) *Ancilla furiosior quam monachus est.*

(b) *Discipuli ignaviores quam ancilla sunt.*

(c) *Abbatissa sanctorum quam milites est.*

(d) *Equus celerior quam mulus est.*





- 2 With *quam*, the two things compared are always in the same case. Sometimes the ablative is used for the second element, without *quam*: e.g. *Ancilla furiosior monacho est*. Rewrite (b), (c) and (d) above, using the ablative and without using *quam*.

### Superlative adjectives: 'most ...'

The comparative form of Latin adjectives means 'more...' or occasionally 'quite...', 'rather...'. The comparative deals with a comparison between two things: 'My dog is bigger than yours'. The superlative is for three or more: 'My dog is the biggest in the street'. The English adjective either ends '-est', or is preceded by 'most': 'That film was the most exciting I have ever seen.' The Latin equivalent is easily detected, for most superlative forms have the ending *-issimus-a-um* attached to the simple adjective:

	Comparative (of two)	Superlative (of three or more)
<i>furios-us</i> <i>furious</i>	<i>furios-ior</i> <i>more furious</i>	<i>furios-issimus</i> <i>most/very furious</i>

### Practice (iv)

- 1 Identify the correct forms of the superlative of each of the adjectives and translate:
- Abbas-ne (*sanctus-a-um*) ex omnibus monachis est?
  - Benedicti unguenta (*suavis-e*) sunt.
  - Filia Karoli in terra (*bellus-a-um*) est.

2 Here are some irregular ones. See how many gaps you can fill:

Meaning	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Derivative
good		mellior	optimus-a-um	
	malus	peior		pessimist
great, large		maior		maximum
small	parvus	minor		minimum

► **Puer turpissimus!** *The boy is quite scandalous!*

### Shared endings key

-or third declension nominative : pudor, amor, etc.  
passive first person ('I.....')  
Comparative form of an adjective: sanctior

'Domina Lucia? Quid tibi est in hoc loco?' rogavit abbas e solio surgens.

'Ille est peior quam diabolus!' exclamavit illa, gestu in Paulum attonitum furiosissimo.

'Si vis, o virgo, placidior sis,' inquit abbas.

'Semper mihi versus lascivos mittit. Tacere volui sed me pudor vetat.'

'Versus? Cuius versus?'

'Catulli carmina amatoria.'

'Catulli? In hac ecclesia? Quid dicis, puer?'

'Immo, numquam huic virgini versus Catulli misi,' inquit Paulus iam ipse anxius.

'Ecce liber,' inquit virgo, simul et abbati librum quem ex Augustino petiverat tradens. Tum ore Pauli manu percusso, 'ille,' inquit Lucia, 'est scelestus et turpissimus!'

'Mea carissima, desiste,' inquit abbas, mollire eam conans.

'Ignoscas mi, Pater Abbas!' et illa flere incepit.

'Crimina, o puer, audivisti. Quid dices?' iam plurimi monachi aderant.

'Nescio, Domine, nescio.'

'Tu ergo poenas valde dabis, miserrime!' et Paulo secundum ictum dedit.

'Desiste, Pater Abbas!' exclamavit Lucia.

'Rogas ut desistam? Ille tamen castigari debet!'

'Certe poenas dabit, sed Comes Karolus ipse iudicare vult. Reus ad castellum statim in vinclis ducendus.'

'Illum videre vult Comes Karolus?'

'Certe. Ille filiam suam curat.'

'Esto,' inquit abbas, 'Peregrini quidam hodie monasterium relinquent qui vos ad castellum comitentur,' sic locutus librum Augustini in ignem iniecit. Deinde cum monachi reum deduxissent, omnibus praeter se ipsum atque Ricardum digressis, 'Impera ut puerum virginemque trudent,' susurravit abbas.

181

worse than the devil

17

castigari	to be punished
comitor-ari	accompany
conor-ari-atus sum	try, attempt
crimen-inis [n]	charge, crime
cuus	whose
digredior-i, digressus sum	depart
esto	so be it
gestus-us [m]	gesture
ictus-us [m]	blow
ignis-is [m]	fire
impero-are	order, instruct
inicio-ere, inieci, inieci	throw in
iudico-are	try, adjudicate
lascivus-a-um	wanton
miserrimus-a-um	very wretched
mollio-ire	soften, calm
placidus-a-um	calm
plurimi	several
pudor-is [m]	shame
quem	which
reus-i [m]	defendant
secundus-a-um	second
solum-i [n]	seat
surgo-ere	rise
suus-a-um	his/her/their own
veto-are	forbid
vinculum-i [n]	chain

## Living Latin

### The Consolation of Philosophy

Boethius (c.480–524) has been described as the last of the Roman philosophers and the first of the scholastic theologians.

In more senses than one his life represents something of a gateway, a passing point between the two worlds of ancient Rome and medieval Europe, between philosophical fatalism and Christian promise, between Roman pluralism and the one God. He was among the last of the Stoics and first of the martyrs.

A statesman and philosopher under the emperor Theodoric, Boethius fell from favour, was wrongly condemned and imprisoned in Pavia, where he wrote *The Consolation of Philosophy*. The central figure of the *Consolation* is the 'Lady Philosophy', a pagan presence in a Christian world. She visits his cell and encourages him to look beyond his immediate suffering and to recognize the manipulations of Fortuna, for whose fair-weather charms she urges caution.

The Stoics shared with Christians an inclination to confront life's hardships without demur, but viewed the causes of their suffering differently. Fortuna was a hazard of life, who had to be tolerated; she was the most worshipped deity in the ancient world. Christians, on the other hand, were inspired by an omniscient and benign God, and Boethius – a born Christian but with the education of a Stoic – wrestles with the reconciliation of human suffering and divine goodness. His *Consolation* was one of the most prized and influential books of the middle ages, and was translated into English by Alfred the Great some three hundred years later. Boethius died under torture in prison.

- 1 Philosophy reaches Boethius' cell to find him writing poetry under the influence of the Muses, whom she immediately dismisses:

**\*Quis has scenicas meretriculas ad hunc aegrum permisit accedere quae dolores eius non modo nullis remediis foverent, verum dulcibus insuper alerent venenis?**

*Who let these thespian tarts visit this sick fellow? They have no treatment for his condition – only sweet poisons to make it worse.*

- 2 She asks the nature of his complaint:

**\*Si operam medicantis expectas, oportet vulnus detegas.**

*If you wish to have the attention of a doctor, then you must lay bare your wound.*

- 3 Boethius says he has been a good philosopher-politician.

**\*Haecine praemia referimus tibi obsequentes? Atqui tu hanc sententiam Platonis ore sanxisti: beatas fore res publicas, si eas vel studiosi sapientiae regerent vel earum rectores studere sapientiae contigisset. Tu eiusdem viri ore hanc sapientibus capessendae rei publicae necessariam causam esse monuisti, ne improbis flagitiosisque civibus urbium relicta gubernacula pestem bonis ac perniciem ferrent.**

*Are these the rewards we earn for our loyalty to you? After all it was your idea you put into the mouth of Plato: that those political states which were ruled by philosophers – or by kings who had experience of studying philosophy – would be happy. Through the same man you said there was an inevitable case for a republic to be guided by philosophers, to prevent the business of government falling into the hands of unprincipled and wicked characters which would bring ruin and destruction upon good people.*

**4 Boethius cannot understand how evil can succeed.**

**\*Non ita sensus nostros maeror hebetavit ut impios scelerata contra virtutem querar molitos, sed quae speraverint effecisse vehementer admiror. Nam deteriora velle nostri fuerit fortasse defectus, posse contra innocentiam, quae sceleratus quisque conceperit inspectante deo, monstri simile est.**

(i, 1–4)

*My grief has not so blunted my senses that I should complain about those no-good sorts who try to topple virtue with their wicked schemes, but that they should have succeeded in their ambitions is frankly a shock. For we all have it in us to be less than perfect, but in full view of God, the wicked overcoming innocence? – it's appalling.*

**5 Philosophy says Boethius has mistakenly courted Fortuna:**

**\*Fortunae te regendum dedisti; dominae moribus oportet obtemperes. Tu vero volventis rotae impetum retinere conaris?**

(ii, 1)

*You allowed yourself to be ruled by Fortuna; so your mistress's ways must be accommodated. Are you really going to try to stop the momentum of her turning wheel?*

**\*post-classical**



## Revision

- 1 Change each underlined verb into the perfect tense, and translate:
  - (a) Discipuli Danos in silvam sequuntur.
  - (b) Lucia in ecclesiam progređitur.
  - (c) In silva loquimur.
  - (d) Augustinus filiam comitis miratur.
- 2 Change each underlined verb into the present tense, and translate:
  - (a) Lucia peregrinos in monasterium secuta est.
  - (b) De gravissimis rebus locutus sum.
  - (c) Peregrini in silva conspirantes visi sunt.
  - (d) Augustini-ne carmen miratus es?
- 3 Translate into Latin:
  - (a) Are horses lazier than mules?
  - (b) Is Augustine the best student?
  - (c) Paul, have you ever seen a holier abbess?
  - (d) Richard was more cruel than the Danes themselves.

# 18

**versus Catulli  
combusti sunt!**  
the verses of Catullus have been  
incinerated!

**In this unit you will learn  
about**

- **'if' clauses**
- **direct and reported speech**
- **and find out more about  
the story of Dido and  
Aeneas**

**'If' clauses**

The Latin for 'if' is *si* ('if...not': *nisi*). For something which could happen (or have happened) as easily as not, the verb is in the indicative:

<i>Si e monasterio effugiemus, ad castellum ibimus.</i>	<i>If we escape from the monastery, we will go to the castle.</i>
<i>Si haec putas, stultus es.</i>	<i>If you think this, you are foolish.</i>
<i>Si haec putavisti, stultus fuisti.</i>	<i>If you thought this, you were foolish.</i>

For a more remote possibility, or for musing on what-might-have-been, the subjunctive is used:

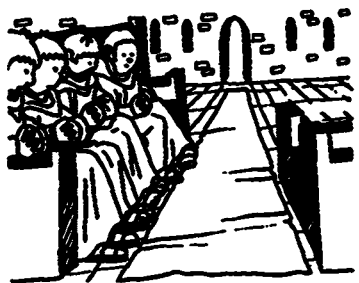
<i>Stephanus, si viveret, nobis subveniret.</i>	<i>If Stephen were alive (now), he would be helping us.</i>
<i>Si in Hispaniam ambules, stultus sis.</i>	<i>If you were to walk to Spain, you'd be a fool.</i>
<i>Si Benedictum vidisses, risisses.</i>	<i>If you had seen Benedict, you would have laughed.</i>

**Practice (i)**

Match pictures to sentences, and translate:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) <i>Si mulus opulentus<br/>esset, plaustra non<br/>traheret.</i> | (c) <i>Si magister in schola<br/>mansisset, nunc<br/>viveret.</i> |
| (b) <i>Si effugere conabatur,<br/>eum occide!</i>                   | (d) <i>Si bellus esses,<br/>te amarem.</i>                        |





## ❑ Vale Augustine! Farewell, Augustinus!

Augustinus ad cellam in qua Paulus erat vinctus furtim adiit. 'Psst, Paule,' susurravit amicus, 'adsum ego. Si fortuna tibi favebit mox eris liber!'

'Augustine!'

'St; ne custodes excites. Tandem Lucia librum meum accepit. Me-ne quoque amat? Quid putas? Si antea cognovissem, iam rivalis tuus essem. Donum, quod Luciae dedi, erat solum exemplar Catulli.'

'Eheu, malos tibi nuntios refero,' susurravit Paulus.

'Quid dicis?'

'Liber ille est combustus.'

'Catulli liber?'

'Ita vero.'

'Combustus? A quo? Num Lucia versus Catulli delevit?'

'Abbas librum in ignem iniecit.'

'Non ita.'

'Vero.'

'Vae! Vae! Me miserrimum!' magna voce gemit Augustinus.

'Taceas, ne custodes veniant.'

'Illi erant soli Catulli versus in bibliotheca, in monasterio, in terra! Quid agam?'

'Si potes omnes versus eius revocare, alium librum exscribas. Nunc mi ignoscas, amice, sed ego maiore in periculo sum quam tu.'

'Quid? Vero. Dico tibi, Paule: tu es fortunatus.'

'Vero? Num felix in vinculis?'

'Ecce, accipe hunc librum.'

'Alium librum?'

'De Philosophiae Consolatione.'

'O Augustine, quid agis? Boethius, cum Consolationem scripsisset, in vinculis trucidatus est. Ego non consolationem sed auxilium desidero!'

'Si librum leges,' respondit Augustinus, 'et consolationem et auxilium invenies. Lucia consilium cepit. Mox te iuvabit in teneris dominae iacere lacertis. Vale Paule,' inquit Augustinus librum, in quo Lucia epistulam scripserat, tradens.  
'Vale amice.'

a quo	by whom
antea	beforehand
auxilium-i [n]	help
cognosco-ere-ovi	discover
combustus-a-um	incinerated
consilium-i [n]	plan
consolatio-nis [f]	consolation
deleo-ere-evi-etum	destroy
donum-i [n]	gift
excito-are	wake, arouse
exemplar-is [n]	copy
faveo-ere [+dat.]	favour
felix	fortunate, happy
iuvabit	it will please, delight
lacertus-i [m]	arm
liber-a-um	free
periculum-i [n]	danger
revoco-are	recall
rivalis-is [m]	rival, competitor
tener-a-um	tender

## Direct and reported speech

An author can use direct speech ("...") to show what his characters say. However, it is far more common in Latin for the words of a character to be expressed indirectly, with the help of a construction called the 'accusative and infinitive'. This gives us not the exact words spoken, but a report of what was said:

Dixit Paulum vivere.

*She said Paul to be alive (that Paul was...).*

The accusative (Paulum) is the subject, and the infinitive (vivere) the verb, of the original statement: "Paulus vivit", what she or he actually said.

The accusative and infinitive is used for reported thoughts as well as spoken words:

Paulus credidit Stephanum  
pium sed abbatem  
scelestum esse.

*Paul believed Stephen to be  
pious but the abbot wicked  
(that Stephen was...).*

You will meet this construction all the time in Latin texts. If, however, the reported words are a question rather than statement, then a question word (e.g. *quid*, *cur*) is used with a verb in the subjunctive:

Virgo rogavit cur in stagno  
natarem.

*The maiden asked why I was  
swimming in the pond.*

Nescio quid sit amor.

*I do not know what love is.*

If the reported words are a command or piece of advice, then *ut* is used with the subjunctive (negative *ne*):

Abbas nobis imperavit ne  
scholam relinqueremus.

*The abbot ordered us not to  
leave the school.*

Paulus virginem monuit ut  
in stagno se celaret.

*Paul advised the maiden to  
hide in the pond.*

## Practice (ii)

1 Write down the actual words or thoughts:

e.g. Dixit Paulum vivere.  
'Paulus vivit.'

- (a) Paulus credidit Stephanum pium esse.
- (b) Augustinus dixit abbatem scelestum esse.
- (c) Stephanus discipulis imperavit ut in monasterium festinarent.
- (d) Virgo rogat ubi peregrini sint.

2 Complete the sentences reporting what was said:

- (a) 'Scelestus puer poenas dare debet.'  
Abbas dixit \_\_\_\_.
- (b) 'Corpus magistri in sarcina est.'  
Paulus abbati dicit \_\_\_\_.
- (c) 'Ubi sunt versus Catulli?'  
Augustinus rogat ubi \_\_\_\_.

## ► In antro *In the cave*

Eodem igitur die ad castellum septem Dani et Lucia et Paulus et mulus, qui plastrum trahebat, e monasterio profecti sunt. Mox, cum omnes obscuram per silvam iter facerent, Paulus vinctus plastrum sequens 'Io mule, lente, lentel' susurrare incepit. Unus Danorum

anxius perturbatusque "Sst, puer!" inquit, arbores umbrasque circumspiciens. Subito exclamavit Lucia "Ecce aliquis in arboribus! Illum-ne vidistis?"

"Ubi?" respondit unus ex Danis.

"Credo alios pravos in animo habere illum liberare," inquit virgo, cui alius se videre nihil posse respondit. Tertius socios rogavit ut festinarent dicens "Silvam hanc non amo".

"Vos hic remanete dum illos quaero," inquit virgo.

"Immo vero! Absit ut nos relinquant." Omnes Luciam obsecrabant ut maneret; quae tamen, equo citato, mediam in silvam evanuit. Ceteris diu moratis, stridens ex arboribus per auras sagitta plaustro adhaesit. Dani, cum se opprimi vidissent, attoniti paulisper ex equis descenderunt et se in dumis celaverunt. Deinde illum, qui Paulum custodiebat, gladio stricto ut captivum trucidaret, alia sagitta per auras stridens transfixit. Inde Paulus gladio Dani vulnerati raptō se liberavit et "lo! lo!" magna voce equos Danorum adeo terruit ut non solum illi sed etiam mulus ipse quam celerrime densas in arbores effugerint.

"Vae! Plaustum, plaustum!" gemit quidam et e latebra desiliit ut mulum sisteret; frustra. Mulus iam mediam in silvam abierat secum plaustum atque praedam Danorum trahens. "Et ubi est noster captivus?" rogavit alius. Dani tamen animis collectis Paulum nusquam invenire poterant.

Interea Lucia et Paulus mediam per silvam iter faciebant, et tandem defessa pluviaeque madida "Ohe caballe, ohe caballe!" inquit Lucia. "Ecce antrum!"

"Hoc antea numquam vidi," inquit Paulus ex equo descendens. In antro Paulus aquam e facile virginis tergens "Tu es mirabilis," susurravit, "Bellissima Lucia, te amo."

"Ergo da mi basia."

"Quidquid imperas, labor est suavis."

"Impero ut taceas."

Nec multo post tumultu excitati e spelunca furtim exierunt ut quis adesset cognoscerent. Primo nihil viderunt; deinde conspexerunt Lucia atque Paulus plaustum et res omnes, quas Dani ex ecclesia rapuerant, et placidum sub arboribus pascentem mulum.

absit ut [medieval]

adeo

antea

antrum-i [n]

captivus-i [m]

colligo-ere-egi-ectum

cui

desilio-ire-ui

far be it that

so much, to such an extent

before

cave

prisoner

recover

to whom

leap out

dum	while
effugerint [perf. subj.]	(they) fled
eodem [abl.]	same
evanesco-ere, evanui	disappear
gladius-l [m]	sword
latebra-ae [f]	hiding-place
madidus-a-um	soaked
moror-ari-atus	delay, wait
nusquam	nowhere
obsecro-are	implore
ohel	whoa!
opprimi [passive infin.]	to be attacked
pascor-i	graze, eat
paulisper	a little while
pluvia-ae [f]	rain
praeda-ae [f]	loot
pravus-a-um	wicked
proficiscor-i, profectus	set out
quam celerrime	as quickly as possible
quas [acc.f. pl.]	which
quidquid	whatever
septem	seven
sisto-ere	stop
spelunca-ae [f]	cave
stringo-ere-nxi-ctum	draw (sword)
tergo-ere	wipe
terreo-ere-ul-itum	frighten
tertius-a-um	third
vulnero-are-avi-atum	wound

## ► Living Latin

### Love in the rain

- 1 The story of Dido and Aeneas is one of the most celebrated in literature. Aeneas lands in north Africa, a fugitive from Troy, and is looked after by the queen of Carthage, Dido, who falls in love with him. During his stay, she and her fellow Carthaginians entertain Aeneas and his Trojans to a hunt in the forest.

**Tandem progreditur magna stipante caterva  
Sidoniam picto chlamydem circumdata limbo;  
cui pharetra ex auro, crines nodantur in aurum,  
aurea purpuream subnectit fibula vestem.**



**Nec non et Phrygii comites et laetus Iulus  
incedunt. Ipse ante alios pulcherrimus omnis  
infert se socium Aeneas atque agmina Iungit.**

*Now at last Dido steps out, a great throng all around her. She wears a Sidonian habit with a colourful hem, and a quiver of gold and her hair tied back in a golden pin, and gold is the brooch which fastens her purple cloak. There too come the Trojans, and cheerful Iulus. Aeneas himself, the most handsome of all, rides up to her side and brings the two parties together.*

**2 A thunderstorm brings Dido and Aeneas alone together.**

**Interea magno misceri murmure caelum  
incipit, insequitur commixta grandine nimbus.  
Et Tyrii comites passim et Troiana Iuventus  
Dardaniusque nepos Veneris diversa per agros  
tectata metu petiere; ruunt de montibus amnes.  
Speluncam Dido dux et Troianus eandem  
deveniunt. Prima et Tellus et pronuba Iuno  
dant signum; fulsere ignes et conscius aether  
conubilis, summoque ulularunt vertice Nymphae.**

(Aeneid iv, 136–42, 160–8)

*Before long there was a loud rumbling in the sky, and there followed a downpour of rain with hailstones. The young men of Troy and their Carthaginian friends and he of Dardan's line, grandson of Venus, all scattered helter-skelter across the fields in fright, looking for cover, while torrents of water sweep down from the hill-tops. Dido and Aeneas, the prince of Troy, happen upon the same cave. Mother Earth – she's first – and Juno in nuptial attendance give the signal; lightning flickers, heaven witnesses their coupling, and on peak-tops the Nymphs wail in ecstasy.*

## Revision

**1 Rewrite these sentences making the underlined words plural, and translate:**

- (a) Si ille discipulus Danos non timeret, stultus esset.
- (b) Stephanus mihi dixit cucullum monachum non facere.
- (c) Qui ab amico amatur est felix.
- (d) Monachus, si avaritia non movetur, laudandus est.

2 Translate:

- (a) I believe that Augustine is a good friend to Paul.
- (b) Stephen, if you find (*use the future*) Richard, ask (*imperative*) him to come (*pres. subj.*) to the cloister.
- (c) The students say that Lucia is the most beautiful of all the maidens.
- (d) Surely we do not believe that the daughter of the count loves the humble student?

## Reference tables

## Nouns: five declensions

First declension		Second declension			
	wood	mule	master	boy	wine
	<b>Singular</b>			<b>Singular</b>	
nom.	silva	mulus	magister	puer	vinum [n]
acc.	silvum	mulum	magistrum	puerum	vinum
gen.	silvae	mulī	magistri	puerī	vinī
dat.	silvae	mulō	magistro	puero	vinō
abl.	silva	mulō	magistro	puero	vinō
	<b>Plural</b>		<b>Plural</b>		
nom.	silvae	mulī	magistri	puerī	vinā
acc.	silvas	mulos	magistros	pueros	vinā
gen.	silvarum	mulorum	magistorum	puorum	vinorum
dat.	silvis	mulis	magistris	pueris	vinis
abl.	silvis	mulis	magistris	pueris	vinis

# Nouns: five declensions – continued

Third declension					
	father	abbot	maiden	song, poem	time
Singular					
nom.	pater	abbas	virgo	carmen [n]	tempus [n]
acc.	patrem	abbatem	virginem	carmen	tempus
gen.	patris	abbatis	virginis	carminis	temporis
dat.	patri	abbati	virgini	carmini	tempori
abl.	patre	abbate	virgine	carmine	tempore
Plural					
nom.	patres	abbates	virgines	carmina	tempora
acc.	patres	abbates	virgines	carmina	tempora
gen.	patrum	abbatum	virginum	carminum	temporum
dat.	patribus	abbatibus	virginibus	carminibus	temporibus
abl.	patribus	abbatibus	virginibus	carminibus	temporibus
Fourth declension			Fifth declension		
bow			thing		
			Singular		
nom.	arcus	manus	res		
acc.	arcum	manum	rem		
gen.	arcus	manus	rei		
dat.	arcai	manu	rei		
abl.	arco	manu	re		
Plural			Plural		
nom.	arcus	manus	res		
acc.	arcus	manus	res		
gen.	arcuum	manuum	rerum		
dat.	arcibus	manibus	rebus		
abl.	arcibus	manibus	rebus		

# Pronouns

	I/me	you (s.)	we/us	you (pl.)	himself, herself, themselves
nom.	ego	tu	nos	vos	—
acc.	me	te	nos	vos	se
gen.	mei	tui	nostrum	vestrum	sui
dat.	mihi	tibi	nobis	vobis	sibi
abl.	me	te	nobis	vobis	se
	Singular		Plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine
		this, he, she, it		these, they, them	
nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	haec
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	haec
gen.	huius	huius	huius	horum	horum
dat.	huic	huic	huic	his	his
abl.	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his
		those, they, them			
nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illa
acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illa
gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illorum
dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis
abl.	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis

# Pronouns – continued

Singular		Plural	
<p>nom. is</p> <p>acc. eum</p> <p>gen. eius</p> <p>dat. ei</p> <p>abl. eo</p>	<p>that, he, she, it</p> <p>ea</p> <p>eam</p> <p>eius</p> <p>ei</p> <p>ea</p>	<p>those, they, them</p> <p>eae</p> <p>eas</p> <p>earum</p> <p>eis</p> <p>eis</p>	<p>ea</p> <p>ea</p> <p>eorum</p> <p>eis</p> <p>eis</p>
	<p>who, which</p> <p>quae</p> <p>quam</p> <p>cuius</p> <p>cui</p> <p>qua</p>	<p>qui</p> <p>quos</p> <p>quorum</p> <p>quibus</p>	<p>quae</p> <p>quas</p> <p>quorum</p> <p>quibus</p> <p>quibus</p>
	<p>he himself, she herself, itself</p> <p>ipse</p> <p>ipsum</p> <p>ipsius</p> <p>ipsi</p> <p>ipse</p>	<p>they themselves</p> <p>ipseae</p> <p>ipsas</p> <p>ipsarum</p> <p>ipsas</p> <p>ipsas</p>	<p>ipsea</p> <p>ipsa</p> <p>ipsorum</p> <p>ipsas</p> <p>ipsas</p>

## Adjectives

masc.		fern. Singular	sanctus-e-um: blessed, saintly		fern. Plural	neut.
nom. acc. gen. dat. abl.	sanctus	sancta	sanctum	sancti	sanctae	sancta
	sanctum	sanctam	sanctum	sanctos	sanctas	sancta
	sancti	sanctae	sancti	sanctorum	sanctanum	sanctorum
	sancto	sanctae	sancto	sanctis	sanctis	sanctis
abl.	sancto	sancta	sancto	sanctis	sanctis	sanctis

omnis: all, every masc./fern.		neut.	prudens: wise masc./fern.		maior: greater masc./fern.	
nom. acc. gen. dat. abl.	omnis	omne	prudens	prudens	maior	maius
	omnem	omne	prudenter	prudens	maiores	maius
	omnis	omni	prudens	prudens	maioris	maioris
	omni	omni	prudens	prudens	maiori	maiori
abl.	omni	omni	prudens	prudens	maiori	maiori
	omni	omni	prudens	prudens	maiori	maiori
Plural						
nom. acc. gen. dat. abl.	omnes	omnia	prudentes	prudens	maiores	maiores
	omnes	omnia	prudentes	prudens	maiores	maiores
	omnium	omnibus	prudens	prudens	maiorum	maiorum
	omnibus	omnibus	prudens	prudens	maioribus	maioribus

## Regular verbs: indicative active

amare to love	monere to warn	mittere to send	capere to capture	audire to hear
amo	moneo	mitto	capio	audio
amas	mones	mittis	capis	audis
amat	monet	mittit	capit	audit
amamus	monemus	mittimus	capimus	audimus
amatis	monetis	mittitis	capitis	auditis
amant	monent	mittunt	captant	audiunt
amabo	monebo	mittam	captam	audiam
amabis	monebis	mittes	capies	audies
amabit	monebit	mittet	captet	audiet
amabimus	monebimus	mittemus	captemus	audiemus
amabitis	monebitis	mittetis	captetis	audietis
amabunt	monebunt	mittent	captent	audient
amabam	monebam	mittebam	captēbam	audiebam
amabas	monebas	mittebas	captēbas	audiebas
amabat	monebat	mittebat	captēbat	audiebat
amabamus	monebamus	mittebamus	captēbamus	audiebamus
amabatis	monebatis	mittebatis	captēbatis	audiebatis
amabant	monebant	mittebant	captēbant	audiebant



# Regular verbs: indicative active – continued

amare to love	monere to warn	mittere to send	capere to capture	audire to hear
amavi	monui	misit	cepi	audivi
amavisti	monuisti	misisti	cepisti	audivisti
amavit	monuit	misit	cepit	audivit
amavimus	monuimus	misimus	cepimus	audivimus
amavistis	monuistis	misistis	cepistis	audivistis
amaverunt	monuerunt	miserunt	ceperunt	audiverunt
amaveram	monueram	miseram	ceperam	audiveram
amaveras	monueras	miseras	ceperas	audiveras
amaverat	monuerat	miserat	ceperat	audiverat
amaveramus	monueramus	miseramus	ceperamus	audiveramus
amaveratis	monueratis	miseratis	ceperatis	audiveratis
amaverant	monuerant	miserant	ceperant	audiverant

Perfect

Pluperfect

## Regular verbs: indicative passive

Present		
amor	moneor	audior
amaris	moneris	audiris
amatur	monetur	auditur
amamur	monemur	audimur
amamini	monemini	audimini
amantur	monentur	audiuntur
Future		
amabor	monebor	audiar
amaberis	moneberis	audieris
amabitur	monebitur	audietur
amabimur	monebimur	audiemur
amabimini	monebimini	audiemini
amabuntur	monebuntur	audientur
Imperfect		
amabar	monebar	audiebar
amaberis	monebaris	audiebaris
amabatur	monebatur	audiebatur
amabamur	monebamur	audiebamur
amabamini	monebamini	audiebamini
amabantur	monebantur	audiebantur

Regular verbs: indicative passive – *continued*

amatus sum	monitus sum	missus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
amatus es	monitus es	missus es	captus es	auditus es
amatus est	monitus est	missus est	captus est	auditus est
amati sumus	moniti sumus	missi sumus	capti sumus	auditi sumus
amati estis	moniti estis	missi estis	capti estis	auditi estis
amati sunt	moniti sunt	missi sunt	capti sunt	auditi sunt
		Pluperfect		
amatus eram	monitus eram	missus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
amatus eras	monitus eras	missus eras	captus eras	auditus eras
amatus erat	monitus erat	missus erat	captus erat	auditus erat
amati eramus	moniti eramus	missi eramus	capti eramus	auditi eramus
amati eratis	moniti eratis	missi eratis	capti eratis	auditi eratis
amati erant	moniti erant	missi erant	capti erant	auditi erant

# Verbs: subjunctive (active)

amem	moneam	mittam	Present	audiam	sim (esse)
amēs	moneas	mittas	capiam	audias	sīs
amet	moneat	mittat	capias	audiat	sīt
amemus	moneamus	mittamus	capiamus	audiamus	simus
ametis	moneatis	mittatis	capiatīs	audiatīs	sītis
ament	moneant	mittant	capiant	audiant	sint
amarem	monerem	mitterem	Imperfect	audirem	essem
amāres	moneres	mitteres	caperem	audires	esses
amaret	moneret	mitteret	caperes	audiret	esset
amaremus	moneremus	mitteremus	caperemus	audiremus	essemus
ametis	moneretis	mitteretis	caperetis	audiretis	essetis
amarent	monerent	mitterent	caperent	audirent	essent
amavissem	monuissem	mislessem	Pluperfect	audivissem	fuissem
amavisses	monuisses	misleses	cepissem	audivisses	fuisses
amavisset	monuisset	mislesset	cepisses	audivisset	fuisset
amavissemus	monuissemus	mislessemus	cepissemus	audivissemus	fuissemus
amavissetis	monuissetis	mislessetis	cepissetis	audivissetis	fuissetis
amavissent	monuissent	mislessent	cepissent	audivissent	fuissent

# Irregular verbs

esse to be	posse to be able	velle to wish	ferre to carry	ire to go
sum	possum	volo	fero	eo
es	potes	vis	fers	is
est	potest	vult	fert	it
sumus	possumus	volumus	ferimus	imus
estis	potestis	vultis	fertis	itis
sunt	possunt	volumus	ferunt	eunt
ero	potero	Future	feram	ibo
eris	poteris	volam	feres	ibis
erit	poterit	voles	feret	ibit
erimus	poterimus	volet	feremus	ibimus
eritis	poteritis	volemus	feretis	ibitis
erunt	poterunt	voletis	ferent	ibunt
eram	poteram	Imperfect	ferbam	ibam
eras	poteras	volebam	ferebas	ibas
erat	poterat	volebat	ferbat	ibat
eramus	poteramus	volebamus	ferbamus	ibamus
eratis	poteratis	volebatis	ferebatis	ibatis
erant	poterant	volebant	ferebant	ibant

# Irregular verbs - continued

esse to be	posse to be able	velle to wish	ferre to carry	ire to go
ful	potui	volui	tuli	ii
fuiſti	potuiſti	voluſti	tuliſti	ieſti
fuit	potuit	voluit	tulit	iiſt
fuiſmus	potuiſmus	voluſmus	tuliſmus	iiſmus
fuiſtis	potuiſtis	voluſtis	tuliſtis	ieſtis
fuerunt	potuerunt	voluerunt	tulerunt	ierunt
fueram	potueram	volueram	tuleram	ieram
fueras	potueras	volueras	tuleras	ieras
fuerat	potuerat	voluerat	tulerat	ierat
fueramus	potueramus	volueramus	tuleramus	ieramus
fueratis	potueratis	volueratis	tuleratis	ieratis
fuerant	potuerant	voluerant	tulerant	ierant
		Pluperfect		

# key to the exercises

## Unit 1

### Practice (i)

- 1 (a) me, her, he, us (b) silvam, mulus, sarcina, Paulum 2 (a) sarcinam; the mule carries the bag. (b) Paulus; Paul carries the mule. 3 (a) amat; the mule does not like the wood. (b) ambulat; Paul is walking in the wood. (c) spectat; the mule watches the wood (d) portat; not Paul but the mule is carrying the bag.

### Practice (ii)

- |   |         |          |         |
|---|---------|----------|---------|
| 1 | mulus   | mulum    | mulo    |
|   | Paulus  | Paulum   | Paulo   |
|   | sarcina | sarcinam | sarcina |
|   | silva   | silvam   | silva   |

- 2 (a) nominative, accusative; Benedict longs for some food. (b) accusative; the mule does not like the bag. (c) ablative; Benedict is not in the wood. (d) nominative; Paul is a monk. 3 (a) Paulus cum mulo in silva ambulat; Paul walks with the mule in the wood. (b) in mulo est sarcina; on the mule is a bag.

### Revision

- 1 silvam, monachum, sarcina, cibo 2 (a) Benedictus in silva non ambulat. (b) Sarcina in mulo est. (c) Mulus non Paulum sed sarcinam portat. (d) Mulus silvam non amat. 3 (examples of sentences) (a) Paulus mulum non portat. (b) Cibus in sarcina est. (c) Paulus silvam spectat. (d) Paulus cum monacho ambulat.

## Unit 2

### Practice (i)

- 1 equis, equi, mulo; the mule lives in the field with the horses, but the horses do not work with the mule. 2 (a) portat; the mule carries the bag. (b) habitant; the monks live in the monastery. (c) amant; the mules do not like the horses. (d) laborat; the horse does not work in the field.

**Practice (ii)**

1 silvas, silvis, umbrae; the mule does not like woods because in the woods are shadows. 2 (a) sunt; the bags are on the mule. (b) amat; the mule does not like the shadows in the wood. (c) portant; the monks do not carry the bags. (d) habitant; the horses do not live in the wood.

**Revision**

1 (a) mulum, muli, mulis; discipulus, discipulo, discipulos; umbra, umbram, umbras; (b) equum, equo, equi, equos, equis; silvam, silva, silvae, silvis; sarcina, sarcina, sarcinae, sarcinas, sarcinis. 2 (a) Paulus saepe in agro cum monachis laborat; Paul often works in the field with the monks. (b) Sarcinae in mulo sunt; the bags are on the mule. (c) Discipuli in monasterio habitant; the students live in the monastery. (d) Mulus umbras non amat; the mule does not like shadows. 3 (a) Umbrae in silvis sunt. (b) Monachi sarcinas non portant. (c) Mulus saepe in silvis ambulat. (d) Mulus equos non amat quod cum mulis non laborant.

**Unit 3****Practice (i)**

1 agrum, agri, agris; unguento, unguentis, presbyterum, presbyteri, presbyteros. 2 (a) presbyteri, discipulis, laborant; the priests do not work with the students. (b) vino, oleo, unguentis, ovis; the bag is heavy with wine, oil, perfumes and eggs. 3 (a) monachi, habitant; the monks live in the monastery. (b) silvas, agros; the mule does not like the woods but the fields. (c) equi, mulis, laborant; the horses work with the mules in neither the woods nor the fields. (d) vina, unguenta; Benedict desires wines and perfumes.

**Practice (ii)**

1 (a) viam; the monks walk along the road. (b) agro; the mule is in the field. (c) monachis; the horse, frightened by the monks, comes out of the monastery. (d) equo, terram; the monk falls off the horse on to the ground. 2 (a) in, ex, in; in the wood, the monk falls from the horse and lies on the ground. (b) e, in; the eggs fall from the bag on to the ground. (c) per, ad; the mule walks through the wood towards the monastery.

**Revision**

1 silva, silva, silvae, silvis; mulus, mulum, muli, mulos, mulis; puerum, pueri, pueros; vinum, vinis, libro, libri; ancillam, ancillas, ancillis. 2 (a) discipulus, ambulat; the student walks into the kitchen. (b) presbyter, desiderat; the priest often desires food and wine. (c) silvam; the mule always comes through the wood. (d) librum; the master longs for a book, the students long for wine. 3 (a) Equi neque in silva neque in agro laborant. (b) Monachus unguenta in sarcina portat. (c) Presbyter cum discipulis per silvam ad monasterium ambulat. (d) Discipuli non presbyteri sunt.



## Unit 4

### Practice (i)

1 terram, terrae, terras, terrarum; ramum, rami, ramo, rami, ramorum, ramis; folium, folii, folio, folia, foliorum, foliis. 2 (a) monasterii; the women work in the kitchen of the monastery. (b) feminae; the eggs fall on to the woman's tunic. (c) Benedicti; the students drink Benedict's wine. 3 (a) nominative, genitive; the students desire the maids' wine. (b) nominative, genitive; Stephen is the master of the school. (c) genitive, nominative; Paul is Stephen's student. (d) genitive; the mule is fearful of woods. 4 (a) rami, ramorum; (b) agri, agrorum (c) ovi, ovorum (d) umbrae, umbrarum (e) ancillae, ancillarum

### Practice (ii)

1 (a) Sum Paulus. (b) Sumus Stephani discipuli. (c) Est episcopus. (d) Es in silva. 2 (examples) (a) Ubi est mulus? (b) Cur Paulus in bibliotheca laborat? (c) Femina-ne mortua est? (d) Quis est Stephanus? (Quis est magister?)

### Revision

1 (examples) (a) Femina est in silva. (b) Equus umbras non amat. (c) Magister in bibliotheca laborat. (d) Mulus unguenta oleum vinum ovaque portat. 2 (a) Sumus-ne in silva? (b) Equus feminae audire ventum potest. (c) Mulus sarcinas monachi portat. (d) Num discipuli vinum Benedicti desiderant? 3 ventus, ventum, venti, ventos, ventorum, ventis; tunica, tunicae, tunicae, tunicarum, tunicis; ovum, ovum, ovi, ovo, ova, ovorum.

## Unit 5

### Practice (i)

1 umbrae, ovi, pueri, magister, episcopi, Egberta, libri. 2 (a) umbrae, sarcinae, Luciae, dominae, filiae, viae, etc. (b) episcopus-i, Paulus-i, equus-i, etc. (c) ovum-i, castellum-i, unguentum-i, oppidum-i, monasterium-i, etc.

### Practice (ii)

1 (a) Bestiae furiosae Christianos sanctos fugant. (b) Christianus furiosus bestias sanctas fugat. (c) Christianum furiosum bestiae sanctae fugant. 2 (a) Bestiae furiosae sanctum monachum spectant; the furious beasts watch the saintly monk. (b) Libri magni in bibliotheca sunt; there are great books in the library. (c) Discipuli ignavi mulos furiosos in agris vident; the lazy students see the furious mules in the fields. (d) Monachi somnolenti in bibliotheca non laborant; the sleepy monks do not work in the library.

### Revision

1 lucid; wall; mural; animal; bestial; leaf; foliage; dubious; loquacious; virile; irate 2 (a) Monachi-ne ignavi in agris laborant? Do lazy monks work in the fields? (b) Num discipuli cognati Luciae sunt? Surely the students are not kinsmen of Lucia? (c) Paulus magistri libros in

bibliotheca spectat; Paul is looking at the teacher's books in the library.  
(d) Num Benedictus ancillarum avunculus est? Surely Benedict is not the maids' uncle!

3

Singular				Plural			
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	sanctus	sancta	sanctum	<i>nom.</i>	sancti	sanctae	sancta
<i>acc.</i>	sanctum	sanctam	sanctum	<i>acc.</i>	sanctos	sanctas	sancta
<i>gen.</i>	sancti	sanctae	sancti	<i>gen.</i>	sanctorum	sanctarum	sanctorum
<i>abl.</i>	sancto	sancta	sancto	<i>abl.</i>	sanctis	sanctis	sanctis

5 nocturnal, canine, culinary, decimal, domestic, ecclesiastical, filial, fraternal, maternal, solar, bovine. 6 (a) Num episcopus gulosus est? (b) Discipuli fessi in agro saepe sedent. (c) Domina-ne (femina-ne) furiosa est, Stephane? (d) Muli-ne obscura in silva laborant?

## Unit 6

### Practice (i)

(a) possunt; the monks cannot see the abbess (b) debet; vult; the abbess ought to be working in the kitchen, but wants to watch the monks in the church.

### Practice (ii)

1 ager, agro, agro, agri, agros, agrorum, agris; coquus, coquum, coqui, coquo, coqui, coquos, coquorum, coquis; culina, culinam, culinae, culina, culinae, culinas, culinis; oleum, olei, oleo, olea, olea, oleis, oleis 2 (a) ancilla, discipulis; the maid brings food for the students. (b) episcopo, abbatissae; the student gives perfume not to the bishop but to the abbess. 3 (a) Episcopus historiam monasterii presbytero monachoque narrat; the bishop narrates the story of the monastery to the priest and the monk. (b) Discipulus ignavus Luciam spectat; the idle student watches Lucia. (c) Miser mulus sarcinam onerosam semper portat; the poor mule is always carrying a heavy bag. (d) Cur ancilla cum monacho laborare debet? why should the maid work with the monk?

### Revision

1 (a) ab initio; (b) anno Domini; (c) curriculum vitae; (d) et cetera; (e) ad nauseam; (f) ad infinitum. 2 (a) Bestiae-ne Christianos in amphitheatro devorant? Are the beasts devouring the Christians in the amphitheatre? (b) Monachi boni ludos saevos non amant; Good monks do not like the cruel games. (c) Paulus-ne coquis cibum vinumque semper portat? Does Paul always bring food and wine for the cooks? (d) Cur discipulo libros magister dat? Why does the master give books to the student? 3 paganus, paganus, pagani, pagano, pagani, paganos, paganis, paganis; oppidum, oppidum, oppido, oppido, oppida, oppidorum, oppidis, oppidis; bestia, bestiam, bestiae, bestia, bestiae,

- bestiarum, bestiis, bestiis 4 (a) Paulus multum cibum coquo dat. (b) Discipulus ambulare non cum ancillis sed cum monachis debet. (c) Monachi ludos spectare volunt sed in monasterio laborare debent. (d) Lucia-ne in culina laborare potest?

## Revision I

- 1 (a) Abbatissa bestiam sanctam timet. (b) Ova in episcopum ignavum cadunt. (c) Liber Augustini non discipulis furiosis sed ancillae gratus est. (d) Benedictus gulosus unguenta abbatissae odore desiderat. 2 (a) Monachi muros monasterii videre possunt; the monks can see the walls of the monastery. (b) Miserae ancillae in culinis semper laborant; the wretched maids are always working in the kitchens. (c) Pueri mulis cibum dant; the boys give food to the mules. (d) Cur sunt abbatissae in bibliotheca? why are the abbesses in the library? (e) ludos monachus non spectat; the monk does not watch the games. (f) Episcopus-ne in monasterio habitat? does the bishop live in the monastery? (g) Monachi feminis aquam dant; the monks give water to the women. 4 (a) Discipuli-ne fessi sunt? (b) Malus monachus in monasterio habitare non potest. (c) Magister furiosus libros discipulis miseris dat. (d) Filia dominae laborare in culina non potest. Num ambulare cum discipulis debet? (e) Equi-ne mulum in silva audire possunt? Cibum equorum ad monasterium portat.

5

Singular				Plural			
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	<i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>nom.</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>acc.</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>acc.</i>	<i>magnos</i>	<i>magnas</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>gen.</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>gen.</i>	<i>magnorum</i>	<i>magnarum</i>	<i>magnorum</i>
<i>dat.</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>dat.</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>
<i>abl.</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>abl.</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>

- 7 (a) a wasp

## Unit 7

### Practice (i)

- 1 (a) abbatibus; (b) arboribus; (c) virginis; (d) patri; (e) abbate; (f) arborum (g) patre; (h) virginibus; (i) patris; (j) abbatem 3 (a) Reges in monasterio non habitant; kings do not live in the monastery. (b) Monachus boves in silva potest videre; the monk can see oxen in the wood. (c) Virtutem matrum laudant; they praise the courage of the mothers. (d) Amici-ne abbatum grati sunt militibus? are the friends of the abbots pleasing to the soldiers?

### Practice (ii)

- 2 (a) nomina abbatum; (b) munera matris; (c) multa opera (multi labores); (d) corpora bestiarum; (e) carmina abbatis; (f) gratis carminibus

**Revision**

1 corpus, corporis, corpore, corpora, corporum, corporibus, corporibus; homo, hominis, homini, homine, homines, homines, hominibus, hominibus; potio, potionem, potioni, potione, potiones, potionum, potionibus, potionibus 2 (a) Munera discipuli dominae grata sunt. (b) Num magister in superstitiones credit? (c) Augustinus carmina virginibus recitat. (d) Monachi pacem, milites bellum desiderant. 3 (a) Quis est dea amoris? Est-ne Diana? (b) Abbatissa in silvam cum Patre Benedicto ambulat. (c) Carmina-ne virginis grata abbati sunt? (d) Cur Benedictus carnem panem crustaque semper desiderat?

**Unit 8****Practice (i)**

2 (a) expectant; (b) laudamus; (c) vacat; (d) laboratis; (e) recito; (f) susurrant; (g) equitat; (h) parant; (i) salutant; (j) volitant; (k) praedicat; (l) curat; (m) castigat

**Practice (ii)**

2 (a) sedemus; (b) timent; (c) monet; (d) ridetis; (e) manemus; (f) respondent; (g) docet; (h) dolent

**Practice (iii)**

1 (a) iacet; (b) cantat/cantabit 2 (a) monebit; (b) amabunt; (c) laudabimus; (d) sedebitis; (e) cantabis; (f) iubebimus; (g) praedicabit; (h) videbis; (i) manebimus

**Revision**

1 (a) Equi in caelo volitabunt; horses will fly in the sky. (b) In ecclesia sedebo; I shall sit in the church. (c) Discipulos somnulentos castigabunt; they will punish sleepy students. (d) Lucia mihi in ecclesia susurrabit; Lucia will whisper to me in the church. 2 (a) O Domina, cur doles? mistress, why do you weep? (b) Philosophiam te doceo, o Paule; I am teaching you philosophy, Paul. (c) Labores in agris non toleramus; we do not endure the toils in the fields. (d) Nonne, o virgo, Augustinum amas? surely, maiden, you love Augustinus? 3 munus, munus, muneris, muneris, munera, munerum, muneribus, muneribus; laborem, labori, labore, labores, labores, laboribus, laboribus; allegoriam, allegoriae, allegoria, allegorias, allegoriarum, allegoriis, allegoriis; dei, deo, deo, deos, deorum, deis, deis 4 (a) Abbatissa magnam cenam parabit. (b) Discipuli-ne in bibliotheca adhuc laborant? (c) Quid, o Lucia, susurras? (d) In ecclesia dolebit.

**Unit 9****Practice (i)**

2 (a) omnibus discipulis; (b) breve carmen; (c) difficilia opera; (d) humilium monachorum; (e) turpis superstitio; (f) mollis tunica; (g) fortibus militibus; (h) dulcis amica (domina)

**Practice (ii)**

1 a song not to be heard; an abbess to be revered; tasks to be done; a monk to be praised; gifts to be distributed; words to be added; an abbot to be revered; a maid to be admired 2 (a) audiendus; the abbot has to be heard. (b) amandi; the soldiers are not to be loved. (c) perficiendum; the work is to be finished.

**Revision**

1 (a) *Magnae cenae in culina parandae sunt*; large dinners have to be prepared in the kitchen. (b) *Dulcis domina semper audienda est*; a sweet mistress must always be heard. (c) *Turpes discipuli excitandi sunt*; the disgraceful students ought to be woken. (d) *Humilis servus etiam laudandus est*; a humble serf should also be praised. (e) *Cur abbas reverendus est?* why must an abbot be revered? 2 (a) *Carmen fortibus militibus ancillaeque humili dedicabimus*. (b) *Doleo quod Lucia me amore inflammabit sed non amabit*. (c) *Nunc puella carmen dulce cantabit et pueri historiam monasterii narrabunt* 3 *dulcis*: see *omnis*, *sanctus* in Tables.

**Unit 10****Practice (i)**

1 (a) mittit; (b) capimus; (c) audiunt; (d) capio; (e) mittunt; (f) auditis; (g) mittimus; (h) audis 3 (a) lego; (b) currunt; (c) scribit; (d) incipimus; (e) sepeliunt; (f) fugiunt; (g) bibitis; (h) venit; (i) audiunt

**Practice (ii)**

(a) mittet; (b) capiemus; (c) audient; (d) sedet; (e) audietis; (f) videre poterunt; (g) venire vis; (h) aderimus

**Practice (iii)**

(a) fourth; (b) first; (c) mixed; (d) third; (e) first; (f) second; (g) third; (h) fourth; (i) mixed; (j) second; (k) first; (l) third

**Revision**

1 (a) ducet; the monk will lead the mule into the wood. (b) perficient; today the students will finish the tasks. (c) relinquemus; shall we leave the monastery? (d) potero; I shall not be able to hear Augustine. 2 (a) credo; I do not believe in superstitions. (b) inflammat; (my) girlfriend inflames me with love. (c) audis; do you hear Augustine's poems? (d) legunt; the students read from the Vulgate. 3 (a) *Ancillae carmina Augustini semper audire volunt!* (b) *Lucia iam legere et cantare et in agris laborare potest*. (c) *Animas humilium servorum et regum magnorum curabimus*. (d) *Cur monachi e silva (e) fugiunt?* 4 See Tables of nouns: *opus*: third declension; *nox*: third; *fabula*: first; *sepulcrum*: second; *annus*: second

**Unit 11****Practice (i)**

1 (a) amabat; (b) audiebant; (c) mittebamus; (d) eras; (e) poteram; (f) monebat; (g) erant 2 (a) pluebat; it was raining. (b) iacebat; the pitiable

body lay on (in) the ground. (c) *legebamus*; we were reading the poems of Catullus. (d) *sepeliebant*; they were burying the monk near the church. (e) *flebat*; the maiden was weeping.

### Practice (ii)

1 (a) *praedicantem*; (b) *dormientes* 2 (a) *ovum... cadens*; Egberta sees the egg falling from the bag. (b) *monachum... cantantem*; Lucia was listening to the monk singing in the church. (c) *discipulis stertentibus*; Paul was sitting with the snoring students. (d) *monacho dormienti*; the abbot will not give food to the sleeping monk. (e) *ancillas... susurrantes*; Benedict was listening to the maids whispering in the kitchen. (f) *feminae... poterant*; the women could see Theodorus running in the wood.

### Revision

1 (examples) (a) *Coquum cibum devorantem in culina videre poteram*. (b) *Monachos in silva ululantes audiebamus*. (c) *Abbatissa discipulum vinum bibentem spectat*. (d) *Nunc abbas audiendus est*. 2 (a) *Augustinus duodecim horas dormiebat*. (b) *Sapientes/prudentes magistrum cum discipulis semper bibebant*. (c) *Mulum-ne, o Lucia, in agro bibentem audire poteris?* (d) *Discipuli abbatem ex ecclesia pompam ducentem spectabant*. 3 *laboratis, mittere, mittam, come, venire, scribere, scribunt, scribebant, capere, capiet, capiebat, fear, times, timebas, dare, dabit, dabat, aperire, aperiam, aperiebam, see, videre, videbunt, videbant, praise, laudare, laudabimus, laudabamus, facit, faciet, docere, docebitis, docebatis*

## Unit 12

### Practice (i)

1 (a) *ambulavit*; (b) *viderunt*; (c) *venimus*; (d) *cepi*; (e) *monuisti*; (f) *audivit*; (g) *misimus*; (h) *monuit* 2 (a) *dixit*; the monk (has) spoke(n) to the serf. (b) *laudavimus*; we (have) praised the maids in the kitchen. (c) *ceperunt*; have the Danes captured all the monasteries? (d) *scripsisti*; have you written a letter to the bishop?

### Practice (ii)

(a) *nos, vestram*; (b) *meum, vobis*; (c) *mea, tibi*; (d) *tibi*

### Revision

1 *ambulabit, ambulabat, veniemus, veniebamus, praise, laudare, laudatis, laudabatis, docere, docebo, docebam, say, dicere, dicebas, dixisti, write, scribere, scribunt, scribent, scripserunt, capere, capimus, capiebamus, cepimus, see, vident, videbant, viderunt, esse, est, erat* 2 (a) *dulcia carmina tua*; Augustine, will you read to me your sweet poems? (b) *discipulis*; poor Stephen was always working with the students in the library. (c) *peregrinum*; did Lucia hear the stranger/pilgrim in the wood? (d) *ancillae... monuerunt*; the maids have warned us. 3 (a) *Theodorus-ne vobiscum in silva ambulabat, o discipuli?* (b) *Abbatem-ne praedicantem audivisti, o Augustine?* (c) *Abbatissam coquo susurrantem vidi*. (d) *Epistolam-ne Luciae scripsisti, o Paule?*

## Revision II

1 (a) cantabit; (b) dormiunt, devoraverunt; (c) vidi; (d) scribit  
 2 (a) recitabit, recitabat, recitavit (b) ridebunt, ridebant, riserunt  
 (c) audietis, audiebatis, audivistis (d) scribam, scribebam, scripsi  
 3 (a) docendi; (b) sepeliendum; (c) laudandi; (d) scribenda 4 (a) fugiens;  
 (b) ducentem; (c) sedentes; (d) cantantes 5 See Table of nouns: annus-  
 i: second declension; vita-ae: first; oppidum-i: second; potio-nis: third;  
 clamor-is: third; tempus-oris: third. 6 (a) Virginis-ne carmen audivistis,  
 o Pater Stephane? (b) Episcopus omnibus monachis praedicabat.  
 (c) Mox corpus miserabile monachi sepeliemus. (d) Coquus vinum cum  
 tristi discipulo per totam noctem bibebat.

-7 hospes, hospitis	host, hospital, hostel, hotel, hospice
caput, capitis	capital, cattle, chattel, chapter
discus-i	dish, discus, disk, disco
dignitas, dignitatis	dainty, dignity
phantasia-ae	fancy, fantasy
praedico-are	predicate, preach
blasphemo-are	blame, blaspheme
securus-a-um	sure, secure
computo-are	count, computer

8 (c) an ancient inn or take-away

## Unit 13

## Practice (i)

aestimavi, stātion, salutatum, recitare, vacatum, damnation, mansion,  
 ridere, sessum, tentum, vision, monere, monitum, dictum, ducere,  
 ductum, relinquere, scriptum, ascensum, actum, auditum, ventum,  
 perfectum, receptum

## Practice (ii)

(a) sepultus; Theodorus was buried in a field. (b) visi; the pilgrims were  
 seen in the wood. (c) territus; the mule was terrified by the shadows.  
 (d) laudata; the maiden was praised by her father.

## Practice (iii)

(a) Mulus in silvam ductus umbras timet; the mule having been led into  
 the wood fears the shadows. (b) Discipuli a Stephano docti  
 obdormiverunt; the students having been taught by Stephen fell asleep.  
 (c) Cenam ab ancillis paratam Benedictus devoravit; Benedict devoured  
 the meal which had been prepared by the maids.

## Practice (iv)

(a) legente; while Augustine was reading the poems of Tibullus, Paul was  
 copying out the rule of the monastery. (b) susurrantes; Theodorus saw  
 strangers whispering in the wood. (c) devorato; after much food had  
 been devoured (after devouring much food) Benedict fell asleep.

## Practice (v)

(a) abimus (b) redibunt; (c) adibamus; (d) abierunt; (e) exit; (f) exeunt

**Revision**

1 (a) Theodorus, peregrinos timens, e silva exiit. (b) Coquus ancillas in horro laborantes diu spectabat. (c) Pater Stephanus dolens in ecclesia sedebat. (d) Paulo in stagno natante, peregrini silvam adibant. 2 (a) Lucia, Danis auditis, ad monasterium rediit. (b) Cena ab ancillis parata, a monachis devorata est. (c) Epistula a monacho scripta, comiti tradita est. (d) Discipulus, equo arbori ligato, in stagno natavit (natabat). 3 delinquent; ridere; ducere; scribe, scribble; recipient 4 Past participle of desidero-are, neuter plural: the desired things.

**Unit 14****Practice (i)**

2 (a) vultu tristi; (b) casu; (c) grati versus; (d) manu; (e) spiritus sancti; (f) gemitu; (g) exercitus comitis; (h) virginis arcus sagittaeque

**Practice (iii)**

Prefix	Simple verb		Compound	
ad	ire	go	adire	go to, approach
ex	ire	go	exire	go out
ab	esse	be	abesse	be absent
ad	esse	be	adesse	be present
ab	mittere	send	amittere	send away, lose
ad	capere	take	accipere	receive, welcome
circum	venire	come	circumvenire	surround, come around
cum	vocare	call	convocare	call together
de	mittere	send	demittere	send down, lower
ad	facere	make	afficere	treat, afflict
cum	putare	think	computare	sum up, reckon
e	rapere	take, snatch	eripere	snatch out
in	ruere	rush	irruere	rush in
in	venire	come	invenire	come upon, find
per	facere	make	perficere	make thorough, finish

**Revision**

1 See Tables: (a) gradus: fourth declension; corpus: third; monachus: second (b) dies: fifth; miles: third; sagitta: first 2 (a) Virgo numquam in stagno nataverat. (b) Peregrini, cibo multo devorato, monasterium reliquerunt. (c) Neque cibum neque aquam inveneramus sed numquam spem amisimus. (d) Discipuli, in gradibus ecclesiae sedentes, versus Augustini audiebant. (e) Monachi omnes libros manu scripserant.

**Unit 15****Practice (i)**

1 (a) Lucia; Lucia's face was sad. (b) ancillarum; the maids' food was devoured by Benedict. (c) Monachi; the monks live in the monastery. (d) vinum; wine was desired by the abbot. 2 (a) illius; his daughter lives in the castle. (b) hac; the abbess was praying in the church with her. (c) ei; Paul always gave food to him/it. (Note: even an inanimate 'it' may



be masculine or feminine, depending on the gender of the noun which the pronoun represents). (d) illi, his; those men were seen in the wood with these men.

### Practice (ii)

1 (a) haec silva; (b) haec unguenta; (c) horum discipulorum 2 (a) illa domina; (b) illa carmina; (c) illum mulum video 3 (a) ea epistula; (b) cum eis monachis; (c) id est

### Practice (iii)

(a) se; (b) ipsa

### Practice (iv)

amabitur, videbunt, audiebat, *she was being heard, she will capture, capiet*

### Practice (v)

1 duxerunt, *they were led*, audivit, auditus est, cepit, capta est, monuit, monitus est

2 (a) Discipuli in schola a Patre Ricardo castigantur; the students are punished in the school by Father Richard. (b) Omnes sarcinae ex oppido a mulo portabantur; all the bags were being carried out of the town by the mule. (c) Carmen Catulli ab Augustino amicis recitatum est; the poem of Catullus was read by Augustine to his friends. (d) Virgo matri dicens a Paulo visa est; the maiden, while speaking to her mother, was seen by Paul. 3 (a) Benedictus cibum devoravit; Benedict devoured the food. (b) Paulus virginem in silva vidit; Paul saw the maiden in the wood. (c) Monachi historiam monasterii narrabunt; the monks will relate the history of the monastery. (d) Dani corpus in horto sepeliverunt; the Danes buried the body in the garden.

### Revision

1 (a) scriptae; many letters were written by Augustine to Lucia. (b) relictum; the monastery was left (abandoned) by the pilgrims. (c) sepultum; the body of the monk was buried. (d) positi; the books were placed in the library. 2 (a) Mox discipuli se liberabunt. (b) Monachi-ne ipsi docent? docere-ne docentur? (c) Paulus Luciaque e silva ambulantes visi sunt. (d) Paulus, peregrinis aduentibus, in stagno se celavit. (e) Multae bestiae a virgine ipsa captae sunt. (f) Boves a Danorum exercitu custodiebantur.

## Unit 16

### Practice (i)

#### Present indicative

we live	vivimus
she (it) stands	stat
we love	amamus
you forgive	ignoscis
she is careful	cavet
we rejoice	gaudemus
we praise	laudamus
she drinks	bibit
you are quiet	taces

#### Present subjunctive

vivamus	may we live
stat	may she (it) stand
amemus	may we love
ignoscas	may you forgive
caveat	may she be careful
gaudeamus	may we rejoice
laudemus	may we praise
bibat	may she drink
taceas	may you be quiet

**Practice (ii)**

(a) *festinate*; (b) *festinetis*; (c) *tacete*; (d) *taceas*

**Practice (iii)**

May you be quiet! *Taceas*! If only you'd be quiet! *Ut taceas*! If only he'd believe us! *Ut nobis credat*! Do not be afraid of the wood. *Ne silvam timeas*. Careful lest they hear. *Cave ne audiant*. I believe so that I may understand. *Credo ut intellegam*.

**Practice (iv)**

(a) *intellegam*; I drink so that I may understand. (b) *celaret*; Lucia plunged herself into the pond in order to hide herself. (c) *dicit*, *intellegant*; Students, as Stephen says, are taught theology that they may understand the work of God. (d) *audiremus*; Augustine advised us to listen to his songs/poems.

**Revision**

1 (a) *Mulus, sarcinis omnibus visis, gemuit*. (b) *Paulus, Ricardo audito, in monasterium festinavit*. (c) *Stephanus, corpore amici sepulto, in ecclesiam abiit*. (d) *Coquus, cibo devorato, in silvam ambulavit*. 2 (a) *Danos omnes capiant!* (b) *Ne abbas librum carminum tuum videat, o Augustine!* (c) *Vinum bibite, o amici! omnes vinum bibant!* (d) *Abbas cum monuit ut monasterium relinqueret* 3 See Tables. (a) *gaudeo-ere*: second conjugation; *scribo-ere*: third; *laudo-are*: first

**Unit 17****Practice (i)**

(a) *laudor*; What good fortune! I am praised by my mistress. (b) *audimur*; we are being heard by the maiden sitting in the rafters. (c) *castigaberis*; o wicked boy, you will be punished by the master.

**Practice (ii)**

(a) *secuta est*; Lucia followed Richard into the monastery. (b) *mirabuntur*; all men will admire my songs/poems.

**Practice (iii)**

1 (a) The maid is more furious than the monk. (b) The students are lazier than the maid. (c) The abbess is holier than the soldiers. (d) The horse is faster than the mule. 2 (b) *Discipuli ignaviores ancilla sunt*. (c) *Abbatissa sanctor militibus est*. (d) *Equus celerior mulo est*.

**Practice (iv)**

1 (a) *sanctissimus*; is the abbot the holiest of all the monks? (b) *suavissima*; Benedict's perfumes are the most delightful. (c) *bellissima*; Charles' daughter is the most beautiful in the land.

2

Meaning	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Derivative
good	bonus	melior	optimus-a-um	optimist
bad	malus	peior	pessimus-a-um	pessimist
great, large	magnus	maior	maximus-a-um	maximum
small	parvus	minor	minimus-a-um	minimum

**Revision**

1 (a) *secuti sunt*; the students followed the Danes into the wood. (b) *progressa est*; Lucia went forward into the church. (c) *locuti/ae sumus*; we spoke in the wood. (d) *miratus est*; Augustine admired the daughter of the count. 2 (a) *sequitur*; Lucia follows the pilgrims into the monastery. (b) *loquor*; I speak about most serious matters. (c) *videntur*; the pilgrims are seen conspiring in the wood. (d) *miraris*; do you admire the song/poem of Augustine? 3 (a) *Equi-ne ignaviores quam muli/mulis sunt*? (b) *Augustinus-ne optimus discipulus est*? (c) *Abbatissam-ne sanctiorem umquam vidisti, o Paule*? (d) Ricardus quam Dani ipsi / Danis ipsis saevior erat.

**Unit 18****Practice (i)**

(a) If the mule were wealthy, he would not be pulling carts. (b) If he tries to escape, kill him! (c) If the master had remained in the school, he would be alive now. (d) If you were beautiful, I would love you.

**Practice (ii)**

1 (a) *Stephanus pius est*. (b) *Abbas scelestus est*. (c) *O discipuli, in monasterium festinate!* (d) *Ubi sunt peregrini?* 2 (a) *Abbas dixit puerum scelestum poenas dare debere*. (b) *Paulus abbati dicit corpus magistri in sarcina esse*. (c) *Augustinus rogat ubi versus Catulli sint*.

**Revision**

1 (a) *Si illi discipuli Danos non timerent, stulti essent*; if those students were not afraid of the Danes, they would be foolish. (b) *Stephanus nobis dixit cucullum monachum non facere*; Stephen told us that a hood does not make a monk. (c) *Qui ab amicis amatur est felix*; he who is loved by his friends is fortunate. (d) *Monachi, si avaritia non moventur, laudandi sunt*; if the monks are not moved by greed, they should be praised. 2 (a) *Credo Augustinum Paulo amicum bonum esse*. (b) *Si Ricardum invenies, o Stephane, eum roga ut in claustrum veniat*. (c) *Discipuli Luciam ex omnibus virginibus/omnium virginum esse bellissimam dicunt*. (d) *Num comitis filiam discipulum humilem amare credimus*.

# Latin-English vocabulary

a(b) <i>by, from</i>	ambo <i>both</i>
abbas-atis [m] <i>abbot</i>	ambulo-are-avi-atum <i>walk</i>
abbatissa-ae [f] <i>abbess</i>	amicus-i [m], amica-ae [f] <i>friend</i>
abeo-ire-ii-utum <i>go away</i>	amitto-ere <i>lose</i>
absum-esse <i>be away, absent</i>	amo-are-avi-atum <i>like, love</i>
accipio-ere-cepi-ceptum <i>receive</i>	amor-is [m] <i>love</i>
ad <i>to, towards</i>	amphitheatrum-i [n] <i>amphitheatre</i>
addo-ere-idi-utum <i>add</i>	amphora-ae [f] <i>jug</i>
adduco-ere-xi-ductum <i>bring</i>	an <i>or</i>
adeo <i>so much</i>	anas-atis [f] <i>duck</i>
adeo-ire-ii-utum <i>go to, approach</i>	ancilla-ae [f] <i>maid</i>
adhaereo-ere-si <i>stick</i>	angelus-i [m] <i>angel</i>
adhuc <i>still</i>	anima-ae [f] <i>soul</i>
adiuvo-are <i>help</i>	animal-is [n] <i>animal</i>
adsum-esse <i>be here, present</i>	animus-i [m] <i>mind</i>
adultero-are <i>be adulterous</i>	annus-i [m] <i>year</i>
advena-ae [f] <i>newcomer</i>	anser-is [m] <i>goose</i>
aedifico-are-avi-atum <i>build</i>	ante(a) <i>before(hand)</i>
aequor-is [n] <i>water, surface</i>	antrum-i [n] <i>cave</i>
aestas-tatis [f] <i>summer</i>	anxius-a-um <i>concerned</i>
aestimo-are-avi-atum <i>value</i>	aperio-ire-ui-utum <i>open</i>
aestuosus-a-um <i>hot</i>	appareo-ere-ui <i>appear</i>
ager, agri [m] <i>field</i>	apud <i>at, in the presence of</i>
agnosco-ere-ovi-otum <i>recognize</i>	aqua-ae [f] <i>water</i>
ago-ere, egi, actum <i>do, drive, perform</i>	ara-ae [f] <i>altar</i>
agricola-ae [m] <i>farmer</i>	arbor-is [f] <i>tree</i>
alienus-i [m] <i>stranger</i>	arcus-us [m] <i>bow</i>
aliquando <i>sometimes</i>	argentum-i [n] <i>silver</i>
aliquis <i>someone</i>	ars-tis [f] <i>art, skill</i>
alius-a-um <i>some, other</i>	ascendo-ere-endi-ensum <i>climb</i>
allegoria-ae [f] <i>allegory</i>	aspicio-ere <i>look at</i>
alter-a-um <i>another</i>	at <i>but, yet</i>

atque *and*  
 attonitus-a-um *astonished*  
 audio-ire-ivi-utum *hear*  
 aura-ae *air*  
 aurora-ae [f] *dawn*  
 aurum-i [n] *gold*  
 austerus-a-um *severe, gloomy*  
 aut *or*  
 autem *however*  
 auxilium-i [n] *help*  
 avunculus-i [m] *uncle*  
 balbus-a-um *stammering*  
 basio-are-avi *kiss*  
 basium-i [n] *kiss*  
 bellum-i [n] *war*  
 bellus-a-um *beautiful*  
 bene *fine*  
 benignus-a-um *kind*  
 bestia-ae [f] *beast*  
 bibliotheca-ae [f] *library*  
 bibo-ere-bibi *drink*  
 blasphemus-ae *blasphemy,*  
     *swear*  
 bonus-a-um *good*  
 bos-vis [m/f] *ox*  
 brevis-e *short*  
 caballus-i [m] *horse*  
 cado-ere, cecidi, casum *fall*  
 caedo-ere, cecidi, caesum *kill,*  
     *cut*  
 caelum-i [n] *heaven, sky*  
 calamus-i [m] *reed*  
 calidus-a-um *warm*  
 campana-ae [f] *bell*  
 candela-ae [f] *candle*  
 canto-are-avi-utum *sing*  
 capio-ere, cepi, captum *take,*  
     *capture*  
 captivus-i [m] *prisoner*  
 caput, capitis [n] *head, capital*  
 carmen-inis [n] *song, poem*  
 caro, carnis [f] *flesh, meat*  
 carus-a-um *dear, special*  
 castellum-i [n] *castle*  
 castigo-are-avi-utum *punish*  
 castitas-tatis [f] *chastity*  
 casus-us [m] *chance*  
 Catullus-i *Catullus*

caveo-ere *be careful*  
 cerebro-are-avi-utum *celebrate*  
 celeriter *quickly*  
 cella-ae [f] *cell, room*  
 cellerarius-i [m] *procurator*  
 celo-are-avi-utum *hide*  
 cena-ae [f] *dinner*  
 centum *hundred*  
 certe *certainly, yes, at least*  
 certus-a-um *sure, unerring*  
 ceterus-a-um *other*  
 chorus-i [m] *choir*  
 Christianus-i [m] *Christian*  
 Christus-i *Christ*  
 cibus-i [m] *food*  
 circum *around*  
 circumspicio-ere-exi-utum *look*  
     *around*  
 cito-are-avi-utum *stir up, rouse*  
 clamo-are-avi *shout*  
 clamor-is [m] *shout, cry*  
 clarus-a-um *bright*  
 claudo-ere *lock*  
 claustrum-i [n] *cloister*  
 cogito-are *think*  
 cognatus-i [m] *kinsman*  
 cognosco-ere-ovi *discover, learn*  
 colligo-ere-egi-utum *recover*  
 combustus-a-um *incinerated*  
 comes-itis [m] *count*  
 comitor-ari *accompany*  
 commemoror-ari *remember,*  
     *relate*  
 computo-are *sum up*  
 confirmatus-a-um *confirmed*  
 conicio-ere *throw*  
 coniunx-gis [m/f] *husband/wife*  
 conor-ari, conatus *try, attempt*  
 consilium-i [n] *plan*  
 consisto-ere-stiti *stop*  
 consocius-i [m] *associate*  
 consolatio-nis [f] *consolation*  
 conspicio-ere-spexi-spectrum *catch sight of*  
 conspiro-are *conspire*  
 constituo-ere-ui-utum *decide*  
 contentio-nis [f] *dispute,*  
     *competition*  
 contineo-ere *contain, hold*

contradico-ere *contradict*  
 convalesco-ere *recover*  
 convocatio-nis [f] *conference*  
 convoco-are-avi-atum *call*  
     *together, assemble*  
 coquus-i [m] *cook*  
 cor-dis [n] *heart*  
 Corinthi-orum [m] *Corinthians*  
 corpus-oris [n] *body*  
 cras *tomorrow*  
 creator-is [m] *creator*  
 credo-ere [+dat.] *believe, trust*  
 crepito-are *rustle*  
 cresco-ere *grow*  
 crimen-inis [n] *charge, crime*  
 crudelis-e *cruel*  
 crustum-i [n] *pastry, cake*  
 cucullus-i [m] *hood*  
 cui, cuius *to whom, whose*  
 culina-ae [f] *kitchen*  
 cum <sup>1</sup> *with, in the company of*  
 cum <sup>2</sup> *when, since*  
 Cupido-inis [m] *Cupid*  
 cur *why*  
 cura-ae [f] *anxiety, stress*  
 curo-are [+acc.] *care for*  
 curro-ere *run*  
 custodio-ire *guard, watch over*  
 custos-dis [m/f] *guardian*  
 damno-are *condemn*  
 Danus-i [m] *Dane, Viking*  
 de [+abl.] *from, about*  
 dea-ae [f] *goddess*  
 debeo-ere-ui-utum *owe, have to*  
 declino-are *swerve*  
 dedico-are *dedicate*  
 defessus-a-um *exhausted*  
 deinde *then, next*  
 deleo-ere-evi-etum *destroy*  
 deliro-are-avi *be silly, insane*  
 demitto-ere *lower*  
 densus-a-um *thick*  
 depono-ere-sui-situm *put down*  
 desidero-are-avi-atum *long for,*  
     *desire*  
 desilio-ire-ui *leap out*  
 desino-ere, desii *stop, abandon*  
 desisto-ere *stop*

despicio-ere *look down*  
 deus-i [m] *god*  
 devoro-are-avi-atum *devour, eat*  
 diabolus-i [m] *devil*  
 dialectica-ae [f] *discussion,*  
     *argument*  
 dico-ere-ixi-ictum *tell, say*  
 dies-iei [m] *day*  
 difficilis-e *difficult*  
 dignitas, dignitatis [f] *distinction*  
 digredior-i, digressus *depart*  
 diligentia-ae [f] *attentiveness*  
 diligo-ere *love*  
 discedo-ere-essi *depart*  
 discipulus-i [m] *student*  
 discus-i [m] *disc*  
 diu *for a long time*  
 divido-ere *divide*  
 divitiae-arum [pl.] *riches*  
 divus-i [m] *god*  
 do-are, dedi, datum *give*  
 doceo-ere-ui, doctum *teach*  
 doctus-i [m] *learned man*  
 doleo-ere *grieve*  
 dolus-i [m] *deceit*  
 domina-ae [f] *lady, mistress*  
 dominus-i [m] *lord, sir*  
 domum *homewards*  
 donum-i [n] *gift*  
 dormio-ire-ivi-utum *sleep*  
 duco-ere-uxi-uctum *lead*  
 dulcis-e *sweet*  
 dum *while, as long as*  
 dumus-i [m] *thicket*  
 duo *two*  
 e(x) *from, out of*  
 ecce *look*  
 ecclesia-ae [f] *church*  
 effugio-ere, effugi *flee away*  
 Egberta-ae [f] *Egberta*  
 eho *eh*  
 elephantus-i [m] *elephant*  
 emo-ere *buy*  
 enim *for, you see*  
 eo, ire, ii, itum *go*  
 episcopus-i [m] *bishop*  
 epistula-ae [f] *letter*

equidem *indeed, to be sure*  
 equito-are-avi *ride*  
 equus-i [m] *horse*  
 ergo *so, therefore*  
 eripio-ere-ripui-reptum *take out, snatch*  
 erro-are-avi *make a mistake*  
 eruditio-nis [f] *learning*  
 et *and*  
 et... et *both... and*  
 etiam *also*  
 evanesco-ere, evanui *disappear*  
 exanimatus-a-um *breathless*  
 excito-are *wake, arouse*  
 exemplar-is [n] *copy*  
 exemplum-i [n] *example, precedent*  
 exerceo-ere-ui-itur *occupy, practise, train*  
 exercitus-us [m] *army*  
 exhalo-are-avi-atum *breathe out*  
 exhaurio-ire-ivi, exhaustum *drain, empty*  
 exhalo-are-avi-atum *cheer*  
 exiguus-a-um *slender, scant*  
 existimo-are *think*  
 explico-are-avi-atum *explain, undo*  
 exscribo-ere-ipsi-iptum *write out*  
 exsequiae-arum [f] *funeral*  
 exspecto-are-avi-atum *wait for*  
 fabula-ae [f] *story*  
 facies-iei [f] *face, appearance*  
 facilis-e *easy*  
 facio-ere, feci, factum *do, make*  
 faenum-i [n] *hay*  
 falsus-a-um *false*  
 fama-ae [f] *story, report*  
 familia-ae [f] *family*  
 famulus-i [m] *attendant*  
 fas *not blasphemous*  
 fatum-i [n] *fate*  
 faveo-ere [+dat.] *favour*  
 felix *fortunate, happy*  
 femina-ae [f] *woman*  
 fenestra-ae [f] *window*  
 fervidus-a-um *burning, impetuous*

fessus-a-um *tired*  
 festino-are-avi *hurry*  
 fibula-ae [f] *brooch*  
 fictilia-ium [n] *earthenware*  
 fidelis-e *loyal*  
 fides-ei [f] *faith, loyalty*  
 figura-ae [f] *shape*  
 filia-ae [f] *daughter*  
 flecto-ere *bend*  
 fleo-ere *weep*  
 folium-i [n] *leaf*  
 fortasse *perhaps*  
 fortis-e *brave*  
 fortuitus-a-um *accidental*  
 fortunatus-a-um *happy, lucky*  
 fragrantia-ae [f] *odour*  
 frater-tris [m] *brother*  
 frigidus-a-um *cool, cold*  
 frigus-oris [n] *chill, cold*  
 frondesco-ere *put forth leaves*  
 frustra *in vain, to no avail*  
 frux-gis [f] *fruit*  
 fugio-ere, fugi *flee*  
 fugo-are *chase*  
 fundo-ere *pour*  
 furiosus-a-um *furious*  
 furtim *secretly*  
 furtum-i [n] *theft*  
 garrulus-a-um *talkative*  
 gaudeo-ere *rejoice*  
 gelidus-a-um *cold*  
 gemitus-us [m] *groan, sigh*  
 gemo-ere-ui *groan*  
 genae-arum [f] *cheeks*  
 gero-ere *conduct, manage*  
 gestus-us [m] *gesture*  
 gladius-i [m] *sword*  
 gracilis-e *elegant, slender*  
 gradatim *gradually*  
 gradus-us [m] *step*  
 Graecus-i [m] *Greek*  
 gratia-ae [f] *favour, grace*  
 gratias tibi *thank you*  
 gratus-a-um *pleasing*  
 gravis-e *serious*  
 gulosus-a-um *greedy*  
 habena-ae [f] *rein*  
 habeo-ere-ui *have*

habito-are-avi *live*  
 herba-ae [f] *grass*  
 heus *hey!*  
 hic *here, this*  
 hiems, hiemis [f] *winter*  
 historia-ae [f] *story*  
 hodie *today*  
 homo-inis [m] *man*  
 honestus-a-um *decent, honourable*  
 honoro-are *honour*  
 hora-ae [f] *hour*  
 horrendus-a-um *fearful, to be feared*  
 hortus-i [m] *garden*  
 hospes-itis [m] *host, guest*  
 humilis-e *humble, meek*  
 iaceo-ere-ui *lie*  
 iam *now, already*  
 ibi *there*  
 ictus-us [m] *blow*  
 igitur *and so*  
 ignavus-a-um *lazy*  
 ignis-is [m] *fire*  
 ignosco-ere [+dat.] *forgive*  
 ille [m], illa [f] *he/she, that*  
 illic *over there*  
 immergo-ere-si-sum *plunge*  
 immo *no, on the contrary*  
 immotus-a-um *stationary*  
 impero-are [+dat.] *order, instruct*  
 impetus-us [m] *attack*  
 improbus-a-um *troublesome*  
 in *in, on*  
 incensum-i [n] *incense*  
 incipio-ere-cepi-ceptum *begin*  
 inde *after that, next*  
 induo-ere *put on*  
 ineptus-a-um *foolish*  
 infirmus-a-um *sick*  
 inflammo-are-avi *inflamm*  
 infra *below*  
 ingredior-i, ingressus *enter*  
 inicio-ere, inieci, iniectum *throw*  
 in *in*  
 inimicus-i [m] *enemy*  
 iniuria-ae [f] *harm*

inno-are-avi *swim, float*  
 inquit (s/he) *says, said*  
 insolitus-a-um *unusual, unfamiliar*  
 intellego-ere *understand*  
 intendo-ere *aim*  
 inter *among*  
 interea *meanwhile*  
 interficio-ere *kill*  
 intro-are-avi *enter*  
 invado-ere *go, come into*  
 invenio-ire-veni-ventum *find*  
 invidia-ae [f] *grudge, jealousy*  
 io! *heyup!*  
 iocosus-a-um *full of jokes, humorous*  
 ipse *she her/himself*  
 iratus-a-um *angry*  
 irruo-ere-ui *rush in*  
 ita *thus, so*  
 itaque *and so, therefore*  
 iter-ineris [n] *way, route*  
 iterum *again*  
 iubeo-ere, iussi *order, tell*  
 iudicium-i [n] *trial, judgment*  
 iudico-are *try, adjudicate*  
 Iuppiter, Iovis [m] *Jupiter*  
 iuvenis-is [m] *youth, young man*  
 iuvo-are *help, please*  
 iuxta *next to*  
 Karolus-i [m] *Charles*  
 labor-is [m] *work*  
 laboro-are-avi *work*  
 lacertus-i [m] *arm*  
 lacrima-ae [f] *tear*  
 laetus-a-um *happy, cheerful*  
 lapis-idis [m] *stone*  
 lascive *wantonly*  
 lascivus-a-um *wanton*  
 latebra-ae [f] *hiding-place*  
 laudo-are-avi-atum *praise*  
 lego-ere, legi, lectum *read*  
 lente *slowly*  
 lentus-a-um *slow*  
 levis-e *light*  
 libellus-i [m] *(little) book*  
 libens *glad*  
 libenter *gladly*



liber-bri [m]	book	modicus-a-um	modest, small
liber-a-um	free	modo ... modo	one minute ...
Liber-i [m]	Liber, god of wine		the next
libero-are-avi-atum	free, deliver	molestus-a-um	troublesome
licet	it is permitted	mollio-ire	soften, calm
ligo-are-avi-atum	tie, bind	mollis-e	soft
lilium-i [n]	lily	monachus-i [m]	monk
lintheum-i [n]	linen cloth	monasterium-i [n]	monastery
locus-i [m]	place	moror-ari-atus	delay, wait
longe	far, distant	mors, mortis [f]	death
loquax	noisy	mortuus-a-um	dead
loquor, loqui, locutus	speak	mox	soon, presently
Lucia-ae [f]	Lucia	multus-a-um	much, many
ludus-i [m]	game, show	mulus-i [m]	mule
lux-cis [f]	light, life	munimentum-i [n]	protection
		munus-eris [n]	gift, show
madidus-a-um	soaked	murmuro-are	murmur
magister-tri [m]	master, teacher	murus-i [m]	wall
magnus-a-um	great, large	musca-ae [f]	fly
maiores-um	bettors, ancestors	mutilo-are-avi	mutilate
maledico-ere	slander		
malus-a-um	troublesome, bad	nam	for
maneo-ere-nsi-nsum	remain, stay	narro-are-avi-atum	relate, tell
manus-us [f]	hand	natalis dies [m]	birthday
mare-is [n]	sea	nato-are-avi	swim
Martialis-is [m]	Martial	nec and ... not	
mater-tris [f]	mother	nec multo post	not long
medicus-i [m]	doctor		afterwards
medius-a-um	mid-, middle of	neque ... neque	neither ... nor
mehercule	well I be Hercules	nescio-ire	do not know
mens, tis [f]	mind	nil (nihil)	nothing
mensis-is [m]	month	nisi	except
mercator-is [m]	trader	nobilis-e	noble
meridies [m]	midday	nomen-inis [n]	name
meto-ere	gather, reap, mow	non	not
metus-us [m]	fear	non ita	no, not so
meus-a-um	my	non numquam	sometimes
miles-itis [m]	soldier	non solum ... sed etiam	not only
mille	thousand		... but also
minime	no, certainly not	nos	we, us
minus	less	nox, noctis [f]	night
mirabilis-e	wonderful,	nugae-arum [f]	trifles, nonsense
	marvellous	nullus-a-um	not any, no one
miror-ari-atus	wonder at	num	surely ... not
miserabilis-e	pitiable	numquam	never
miser-a-um	wretched	nunc	now
miser cordia-ae [f]	pity	nuntii-orum [m]	news
missa-ae [f]	mass	nuper	recently
mitto-ere-isi-issum	send	nusquam	nowhere

obdormio-ire *fall asleep*  
 oboedientia-ae [f] *duty*  
 obscurus-a-um *dark*  
 obsecro-are *implore*  
 observo-are-avi-atum *observe*  
 obstupefactus-a-um *stupefied*  
 occido-ere-cidi *fall*  
 occido-ere-cidi-cisum *kill*  
 oculus-i [m] *eye*  
 odor-us-a-um *scented, sweet-smelling*  
 ohe *whoa*  
 oleum-i [n] *oil*  
 olim *once (upon a time)*  
 omnis-e *all, every*  
 onerosus-a-um *heavy*  
 oppidum-i [n] *town*  
 opprimo-ere *attack*  
 opto-are *choose*  
 opulentia-ae [f] *wealth*  
 opulentus-a-um *wealthy*  
 opus-eris [n] *task, work*  
 origo-inis [f] *origin*  
 oro-are *pray, beg*  
 os, oris [n] *mouth*  
 ostento-are *show (off)*  
 otiosus-a-um *lazy*  
 ovis-is [f] *sheep*  
 ovum-i [n] *egg*  
 paganus-i [m] *pagan*  
 pagina-ae [f] *page*  
 palma-ae [f] *palm*  
 panis-is [m] *bread*  
 par *equal*  
 pareo-ere [+dat.] *obey*  
 paro-are-avi-atum *prepare*  
 pascor-i *graze, eat*  
 paucus-a-um *few*  
 paulisper *a little while*  
 Paulus-i [m] *Paul*  
 pauper-is [m] *pauper*  
 pavidus-a-um *fearful*  
 pax, pacis [f] *peace*  
 peccator-is [m] *sinner*  
 pecunia-ae [f] *money*  
 pecus-oris [n] *herd, flock*  
 per *through, across, along*  
 percutio-ere *strike, beat*

peregrinus-i [m] *foreigner, pilgrim*  
 perficio-ere-feci-fectum *finish*  
 periculum-i [n] *danger*  
 perpetuus-a-um *unending*  
 perterritus-a-um *thoroughly scared*  
 perturbo-are-avi-atum *confuse, disturb*  
 pervigilo-are *lie awake all night*  
 peto-ere *seek*  
 phantasia-ae [f] *fancy, notion*  
 pharetra-ae [f] *quiver*  
 philosophia-ae [f] *philosophy*  
 philosophus-i [m] *philosopher*  
 pius-a-um *pious, dutiful*  
 placeo-ere [+dat.] *please*  
 placet *it pleases*  
 placidus-a-um *calm*  
 plastrum-i [n] *cart, wagon*  
 plenus-a-um [+abl.] *filled (with)*  
 pluit *it is raining*  
 plurimi *most people*  
 pluvia-ae [f] *rain*  
 poena-ae [f] *penalty*  
 poeta-ae [m] *poet*  
 pompa-ae [f] *procession*  
 pomum-i [n] *fruit*  
 pono-ere-sui-situm *place, put*  
 populus-i [m] *people*  
 porta-ae [f] *gate*  
 porto-are-avi-atum *carry*  
 possideo-ere *occupy*  
 possum, posse *be able*  
 post *after*  
 postea *afterwards*  
 potio-nis [f] *drink*  
 praebeo-ere *give, offer*  
 praeda-ae [f] *loot*  
 praedico-are-avi *preach*  
 praedium-i [n] *store, barn*  
 praemium-i [n] *reward*  
 praepono-ere *prefer*  
 praeter *except, besides*  
 praeterea *besides*  
 pravus-a-um *wicked*  
 presbyter-teri [m] *priest*  
 primus-a-um *first*  
 pro *on behalf of*

pro certo *for certain*  
 procedo-ere *go forward*  
 proditor-is [m] *traitor*  
 profero-ferre *put forward*  
 proficiscor-i, profectus *set out*  
 progredior-i, progressus  
     *advance, go forward*  
 prope *near*  
 Propertius-i [m] *Propertius*  
 propter *because of*  
 protego-ere *cover*  
 proximus-a-um *nearest,*  
     *previous*  
 prudens *wise*  
 pudor-is [m] *shame*  
 puer-i [m] *boy*  
 pueritia-ae [f] *childhood*  
 purpureus-a-um *purple*  
 puto-are-avi *think*  
 quaero-ere *seek*  
 quam *than, which*  
 quam celerrime *as quickly as*  
     *possible*  
 quando *when*  
 quatio-ere *shake*  
 qui, quae, quod *who, which*  
 quia *that, because*  
 quidam *somebody, a certain*  
 quidem *in fact, indeed*  
 quintus-a-um *fifth*  
 quis, quid *who, what?*  
 quo *where (to)*  
 quod *because*  
 quomodo *how*  
 quoniam *since*  
 quoque *also*  
 raeda-ae [f] *carriage*  
 ramus-i [m] *branch*  
 recipio-ere-cepi-ceptum  
     *welcome, take back*  
 recito-are *recite, read aloud*  
 recupero-are *recover*  
 redeo-ire *return*  
 refero, referre *report*  
 regio-nis [f] *region*  
 regnum-i [n] *kingdom*  
 rego-ere, rexi, rectum *rule*  
 regula-ae [f] *rule*

reicio-ere-eci-ectum *reject,*  
     *refuse*  
 relinquo-ere-liqui-lictum *leave,*  
     *abandon*  
 remaneo-ere-si-sum *remain*  
 requiesco-ere *rest*  
 res, rei [f] *thing, possession*  
 resono-are *resound*  
 respondeo-ere, respondi *reply*  
 resurgo-ere *reappear*  
 reus-i [m] *defendant*  
 revelo-are-avi-atum *reveal*  
 revenio-ire *return*  
 reveor-eri *hold in awe*  
 revoco-are *recall*  
 rex, regis [m] *king*  
 rideo-ere, risi *laugh, smile*  
 ripa-ae [f] *bank*  
 rivalis-is [m] *rival, competitor*  
 rogo-are-avi *ask*  
 Romanus-i [m] *a Roman*  
 rosa-ae [f] *rose*  
 rudo-ere *bray*  
 rumor-is [m] *rumour, gossip*  
 rursum (rursus) *again*  
 saepe *often*  
 saevio-ire *rage*  
 saevitia-ae [f] *cruelty*  
 saevus-a-um *cruel, mean*  
 sagitta-ae [f] *arrow*  
 sagittaria-ae [f] *archeress*  
 saltem *at least*  
 salutem dicere *greet*  
 saluto-are *greet*  
 salve *hello*  
 salvus-a-um *safe*  
 sanctus-a-um *holy, blessed*  
 sane *certainly*  
 sanguis-inis [m] *blood*  
 sapiens *wise*  
 sapientia-ae [f] *wisdom*  
 sarcina-ae [f] *bag*  
 satio-are *fill, satisfy*  
 satis *enough*  
 saucius-a-um *wounded, smitten*  
 scelestus-a-um *wicked*  
 schola-ae [f] *school*  
 scientia-ae [f] *knowledge*

scilicet! *my foot!*  
 scio-ire *know*  
 scissus-a-um *torn*  
 scribo-ere-ipsi-iptum *write*  
 scutum-i [n] *shield*  
 se *her(him/them)self*  
 secundus-a-um *second*  
 securitas-tatis [f] *peace of mind*  
 securus-a-um *sure, secure*  
 sed *but*  
 sedeo-ere *sit*  
 semel *once*  
 semper *always*  
 sentio-ire *notice, feel*  
 sepelio-ire-ivi, sepultum *bury*  
 septem *seven*  
 sepulcrum-i [n] *grave*  
 sequor-i *follow*  
 servo-are *save*  
 servus-i [m] *serf, slave*  
 severus-a-um *severe*  
 si *if*  
 sic *thus*  
 sicut *just as, as if*  
 silentium-i [n] *silence*  
 silva-ae [f] *wood*  
 simul *at the same time*  
 sincerus-a-um *sound, genuine*  
 sine *without*  
 sino-ere *allow*  
 sisto-ere *stop*  
 sitiens *thirsty*  
 socius-i [m] *colleague, associate*  
 sol-is [m] *sun, day*  
 solium-i [n] *seat*  
 solus-a-um *only, alone*  
 somnium-i [n] *dream, fantasy*  
 somnulentus-a-um *sleepy*  
 somnus-i [m] *sleep*  
 sonitus-us [m] *sound, noise*  
 specto-are-avi-atum *watch*  
 spelunca-ae [f] *cave*  
 spes-ei [f] *hope*  
 spiritus [m] *spirit*  
 splendo-ere *be bright,*  
     *resplendent*  
 st! *ssh!*  
 stabulum-i [n] *stable*  
 stagnum-i [n] *pond, lake*

statim *immediately*  
 stella-ae [f] *star*  
 sterto-ere *snore*  
 stimulus-i [m] *sting*  
 sto-are, steti, statum *stand*  
 strenuus-a-um *energetic*  
 strideo-ere *hum, whistle*  
 stringo-ere-inxi-ictum *draw*  
     *(sword)*  
 studiosus-a-um *hard-working*  
 studium-i [n] *study*  
 stultus-a-um *foolish*  
 stupor-is [m] *senselessness*  
 sub *beneath*  
 subito *suddenly*  
 subsellium-i [n] *pew, bench*  
 subvenio-ire [+dat.] *help*  
 suffragium-i [n] *vote*  
 superbus-a-um *proud*  
 supero-are *surpass*  
 superstitio-nis [f] *superstition*  
 surgo-ere *rise*  
 suspiro-are-avi *sigh*  
 susurro-are-avi *whisper*  
 suus-a-um *his/her/their own*  
 taberna-ae [f] *inn*  
 taceo-ere-ui *be quiet*  
 tacitus-a-um *silent, quiet*  
 tam cito *so quickly*  
 tamen *however*  
 tandem *at last*  
 tectum-i [n] *ceiling*  
 telum-i [n] *missile*  
 temperantia-ae [f] *restraint*  
 tempus-oris [n] *time*  
 tendo-ere *stretch*  
 teneo-ere-ui, tentum *hold*  
 tener-era-erum *tender*  
 tentatio-nis [f] *temptation*  
 tergo-ere *wipe*  
 terra-ae [f] *ground*  
 terreo-ere-ui-utum *frighten*  
 terribilis-e *terrible*  
 territus-a-um *scared*  
 tertius-a-um *third*  
 testimonium-i [n] *evidence,*  
     *proof*  
 theologia-ae [f] *theology*

theologus-i [m]	theologian	valde	very much
thesaurus-i [m]	store	vale dicere	say goodbye
timeo-ere	fear	valeo-ere	be well
timidus	fearful	vanus-a-um	empty, false
timor-is [m]	fear	vel	or
tolero-are	endure, support	venatio-nis [f]	hunt
tollo-ere	lift, raise	venatrix-icis [f]	huntress
tot	so many	venatus-us [m]	hunt
totus-a-um	whole	venio-ire-i, ventum	come
trabs-bis [f]	beam	ventus-i [m]	wind
trado-ere-didi-ditum	hand over	verbero-are	beat
traho-ere	pull, drag	verbum-i [n]	word
trans	across	ver-is [n]	spring
transeo-ire	pass, go by	veritas-tatis [f]	truth
trepidus-a-um	nervous	vero	indeed
tres, tria	three	versus-us [m]	verse
tristis-e	sad	vester-tra-trum	your
trucido-are-avi-atum	slaughter	vestio-ire	clothe
tumultus-us [m]	din	vestis-is [f]	clothing
tunica-ae [f]	tunic, dress	veto-are	forbid
turbulentus-a-um	disturbed,	via-ae [f]	road
	confused	viator-is [m]	traveller
turpis-e	disgraceful	vicesimus-a-um	twentieth
turpitudinis [f]	disgraceful	victima-ae [f]	victim
	behaviour	victoria-ae [f]	victory
tutus-a-um	safe	video-ere, vidi, visum	see
tuus-a-um	your	vigilo-are	be awake, watchful
		viginti	twenty
ubi	when, where	vinclum-i [n]	chain
ulterior	farther	vinolentus-a-um	fond of booze
ululo-are	howl	vinum-i [n]	wine
umbra-ae [f]	shadow	virga-ae [f]	rod
umbrosus-a-um	full of shadows	virgo-inis [f]	maiden
umquam	ever	vir-i [m]	man
unde	from where	virtus-tutis [f]	courage, virtue
unguentum-i [n]	scent, perfume	vita-ae [f]	life
unus-a-um	one	vitium-i [n]	vice
usque	and on to	vivo-ere	live
ut	as, so that, that	volito-are	fly
ut, utinam	if only	volo, velle	want
utilis-e	useful	voluto-are	ponder, turn
		vos	you
vaco-are-avi-atum	be idle,	vox, vocis [f]	voice
	empty	Vulgatum-i [n]	the Vulgate
vacuus-a-um	empty	vulnero-are-avi-atum	wound
vado-ere	go	vultus-us [m]	face, expression
vae	alas, woe		

## English-Latin vocabulary

*abbess* abbatissa-ae [f]  
*abbot* abbas-atis [m]  
*about* de [+abl.]  
*advise* moneo-ere-ui-itur  
*all, every* omnis-e  
*already* iam  
*always* semper  
*also* etiam, quoque  
*amphitheatre* amphitheatrum-i [n]  
*and* et, atque  
*angry* iratus-a-um  
*animal* bestia-ae [f], animal-is [n]  
*approach* adeo-ire-ii-itur  
*army* exercitus-us [m]  
*arrow* sagitta-ae [f]  
*ask* rogo-are-avi  
*astonished* attonitus-a-um  
  
*bad* malus-a-um  
*bag* sarcina-ae [f]  
*be able* possum, posse  
*be away, absent* absum-esse  
*be here, present* adsum-esse  
*be quiet* taceo-ere  
*beast* bestia-ae [f]  
*beautiful* bellus-a-um  
*because* quod  
*believe, trust* credo-ere [+dat.]  
*bishop* episcopus-i [m]  
*book* liber-bri [m]  
*both* ambo  
*both ... and* et ... et  
*bow* arcus-us [m]

*boy* puer-i [m]  
*branch* ramus-i [m]  
*brave* fortis-e  
*bray* rudo-ere  
*bread* panis-is [m]  
*brother* frater-tris [m]  
*build* aedifico-are-avi-atum  
*bury* sepelio-ire-ivi, sepultum  
*but* sed  
*buy* emo-ere  
*by* a(b)  
  
*cake* crustum-i [n]  
*capture* capio-ere, cepi, captum  
*care for* curo-are [+acc.]  
*carriage* raeda-ae [f]  
*carry* porto-are-avi-atum  
*cart* plastrum-i [n]  
*castle* castellum-i [n]  
*chase* fugo-are  
*cheerful* latus-a-um  
*church* ecclesia-ae [f]  
*cloister* claustrum-i [n]  
*clothing* vestis-is [f]  
*come* venio-ire-i, ventum  
*condemn* damno-are  
*conspire* conspiro-are  
*cook* coquus-i [m]  
*copy* exscribo-ere-ipsi-iptum  
*count* comes-itis [m]  
*cruel* saevus-a-um, crudelis-e  
  
*Dane* Danus-i [m]  
*danger* periculum-i [n]  
*dark* obscurus-a-um

<i>daughter</i>	<i>filia</i> -ae [f]	<i>gift</i>	<i>donum</i> -i [n], <i>munus</i> -eris [n]
<i>day</i>	<i>dies</i> -iei [m]	<i>give</i>	<i>do</i> -are, <i>dedi</i> , <i>datum</i>
<i>dead</i>	<i>mortuus</i> -a-um	<i>go</i>	<i>eo</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ii</i>
<i>death</i>	<i>mors</i> , <i>mortis</i> [f]	<i>go away</i>	<i>abeo</i> -ire-ii- <i>itum</i>
<i>devour</i>	<i>devoro</i> -are-avi- <i>atum</i>	<i>god</i>	<i>deus</i> -i [m]
<i>difficult</i>	<i>difficilis</i> -e	<i>goddess</i>	<i>dea</i> -ae [f]
<i>dinner</i>	<i>cena</i> -ae [f]	<i>gold</i>	<i>aurum</i> -i [n]
<i>disgraceful</i>	<i>turpis</i> -e	<i>good</i>	<i>bonus</i> -a-um
<i>do</i>	<i>facio</i> -ere, <i>feci</i> , <i>factum</i>	<i>great</i>	<i>magnus</i> -a-um
<i>dress</i>	<i>tunica</i> -ae [f]	<i>greedy</i>	<i>gulosus</i> -a-um
<i>drink</i>	<i>bibo</i> -ere- <i>bibi</i>	<i>grieve</i>	<i>doleo</i> -ere
<i>drink</i>	<i>potio</i> -nis [f]	<i>groan</i>	<i>gemo</i> -ere- <i>ui</i>
<i>duty</i>	<i>oboedientia</i> -ae [f]	<i>groan</i>	<i>gemitus</i> -us [m]
<i>easy</i>	<i>facilis</i> -e	<i>ground</i>	<i>terra</i> -ae-us [f]
<i>eat</i>	<i>devoro</i> -are-avi- <i>atum</i>	<i>hand</i>	<i>manus</i> -us [f]
<i>egg</i>	<i>ovum</i> -i [n]	<i>hand over</i>	<i>trado</i> -ere- <i>didi</i> - <i>ditum</i>
<i>elegant</i>	<i>gracilis</i> -e	<i>happy</i>	<i>laetus</i> -a-um
<i>elephant</i>	<i>elephantus</i> -i [m]	<i>have</i>	<i>habeo</i> -ere
<i>endure</i>	<i>tolero</i> -are	<i>hear</i>	<i>audio</i> -ire- <i>ivi</i> - <i>itum</i>
<i>enough</i>	<i>satis</i>	<i>heavy</i>	<i>onerosus</i> -a-um
<i>enter</i>	<i>intro</i> -are-avi	<i>here</i>	<i>hic</i>
<i>ever</i>	<i>umquam</i>	<i>hide</i>	<i>celo</i> -are-avi- <i>atum</i>
<i>eye</i>	<i>oculus</i> -i [m]	<i>history</i>	<i>historia</i> -ae [f]
<i>face</i>	<i>vultus</i> -us [m]	<i>hold</i>	<i>teneo</i> -ere- <i>ui</i> , <i>tentum</i>
<i>fall</i>	<i>cado</i> -ere, <i>cecid</i> i, <i>casum</i>	<i>holy</i>	<i>sanctus</i> -a-um
<i>fall asleep</i>	<i>obdormio</i> -ire	<i>hope</i>	<i>spes</i> -ei [f]
<i>farmer</i>	<i>agricola</i> -ae [m]	<i>horse</i>	<i>equus</i> -i [m], <i>caballus</i> -i [m]
<i>fear</i>	<i>timeo</i> -ere	<i>hour</i>	<i>hora</i> -ae [f]
<i>fear</i>	<i>timor</i> -is [m], <i>metus</i> -us [m]	<i>however</i>	<i>tamen</i> , <i>autem</i>
<i>few</i>	<i>paucus</i> -a-um	<i>humble</i>	<i>humilis</i> -e
<i>field</i>	<i>ager</i> , <i>agri</i> [m]	<i>hundred</i>	<i>centum</i>
<i>filled (with)</i>	<i>plenus</i> -a-um [+abl.]	<i>hurry</i>	<i>festino</i> -are-avi
<i>find</i>	<i>invenio</i> -ire- <i>veni</i> - <i>ventum</i>	<i>if</i>	<i>si</i>
<i>finish</i>	<i>perficio</i> -ere- <i>feci</i> - <i>fectum</i>	<i>if only</i>	<i>ut</i> , <i>utinam</i>
<i>fire</i>	<i>ignis</i> -is [m]	<i>immediately</i>	<i>statim</i>
<i>first</i>	<i>primus</i> -a-um	<i>inflamm</i>	<i>inflammo</i> -are-avi
<i>flee</i>	<i>fugio</i> -ere, <i>fugi</i>	<i>kill</i>	<i>interficio</i> -ere
<i>food</i>	<i>cibus</i> -i [m]	<i>kitchen</i>	<i>culina</i> -ae [f]
<i>foolish</i>	<i>stultus</i> -a-um	<i>know</i>	<i>scio</i> -ire
<i>foreigner</i>	<i>peregrinus</i> -i [m]	<i>lady</i>	<i>domina</i> -ae [f]
<i>forgive</i>	<i>ignosco</i> -ere [+dat.]	<i>large</i>	<i>magnus</i> -a-um
<i>free</i>	<i>liber</i> -a-um	<i>laugh</i>	<i>rideo</i> -ere, <i>risi</i>
<i>free</i>	<i>libero</i> -are-avi- <i>atum</i>	<i>lazy</i>	<i>ignavus</i> -a-um
<i>friend</i>	<i>amicus</i> -i [m], <i>amica</i> -ae [f]	<i>lead</i>	<i>duco</i> -ere- <i>uxi</i> - <i>uctum</i>
<i>frighten</i>	<i>terreo</i> -ere- <i>ui</i> - <i>itum</i>	<i>leaf</i>	<i>folium</i> -i [n]
<i>furious</i>	<i>furiosus</i> -a-um	<i>leave</i>	<i>relinquo</i> -ere- <i>liqui</i> - <i>lictum</i>
<i>garden</i>	<i>hortus</i> -i [m]	<i>letter</i>	<i>epistula</i> -ae [f]

*library* bibliotheca-ae [f]  
*lie* iaceo-ere  
*life* vita-ae [f]  
*listen to* audio-ire-ivi-atum  
*live* habito-are-avi, vivo-ere  
*long for* desidero-are-avi-atum  
*lose* amitto-ere  
*love* amo-are-avi-atum  
*love* amor-is [m]

*maid* ancilla-ae [f]  
*maiden* virgo-inis [f]  
*make* facio-ere, feci, factum  
*man* vir-i [m], homo-inis [m]  
*meat* caro, carnis [f]  
*mind* animus-i [m]  
*monk* monachus-i [m]  
*monastery* monasterium-i [n]  
*money* pecunia-ae [f]  
*mother* mater-tris [f]  
*much, many* multus-a-um  
*mule* mulus-i [m]  
*my* meus-a-um

*name* nomen-inis [n]  
*near* prope [+acc.]  
*neither ... nor* neque ... neque  
*never* numquam  
*night* nox, noctis [f]  
*noble* nobilis-e  
*not* non  
*nothing* nil (nihil)  
*now* nunc, iam

*obey* pareo-ere [+dat.]  
*often* saepe  
*one* unus-a-um  
*order* impero-are [+dat.]  
*order, tell* iubeo-ere, iussi  
*other* ceterus-a-um  
*owe, ought* debeo-ere-ui-atum  
*ox* bos-vis [m/f]

*peace* pax, pacis [f]  
*people* populus-i [m]  
*perfume* unguentum-i [n]  
*philosophy* philosophia-ae [f]  
*pilgrim* peregrinus-i [m]  
*pitiable* miserabilis-e  
*plan* consilium-i [n]  
*pleasing* gratus-a-um

*poem* carmen-inis [n]  
*poet* poeta-ae [m]  
*pond* stagnum-i [n]  
*praise* laudo-are-avi-atum  
*pray* oro-are  
*preach* praedico-are-avi  
*prepare* paro-are-avi-atum  
*priest* presbyter-teri [m]  
*prisoner* captivus-i [m]  
*procession* pompa-ae [f]  
*punish* castigo-are-avi-atum

*read* lego-ere, legi, lectum  
*recite, read aloud* recito-are  
*rejoice* gaudeo-ere  
*relate* narro-are-avi-atum  
*remain* remaneo-ere-si-sum  
*return* redeo-ire, revenio-ire  
*ride* equito-are-avi  
*road* via-ae [f]  
*rule* regula-ae [f]  
*run* curro-ere

*sad* tristis-e  
*say* dico-ere-ixi-ictum  
*scared* territus-a-um  
*school* schola-ae [f]  
*see* video-ere, vidi, visum  
*seek* peto-ere, quaero-ere  
*send* mitto-ere-issi-issum  
*serf* servus-i [m]  
*serious* gravis-e  
*shadow* umbra-ae [f]  
*shout* clamo-are-avi-atum  
*shout, cry* clamor-is [m]  
*sing* canto-are-avi-atum  
*sit* sedeo-ere  
*slaughter* trucidio-are-avi-atum  
*slave* servus-i [m]  
*sleep* dormio-ire-ivi-atum  
*slow* lentus-a-um  
*slowly* lente  
*snore* sterto-ere  
*soldier* miles-itis [m]  
*song* carmen-inis [n]  
*soul* anima-ae [f]  
*spirit* spiritus-us [m]  
*spring* ver-is [n]  
*stay* maneo-ere-nsi-nsum  
*step* gradus-us [m]



<i>still</i>	adhuc
<i>story</i>	fabula-ae [f]
<i>student</i>	discipulus-i [m]
<i>surely ... (not)</i>	nonne ... (num)
<i>sweet</i>	dulcis-e
<i>sweet-smelling</i>	odorus-a-um
<i>swim</i>	nato-are-avi
<i>teach</i>	doceo-ere-ui, doctum
<i>teacher</i>	magister-tri [m]
<i>than</i>	quam
<i>there</i>	ibi
<i>thick</i>	densus-a-um
<i>thing</i>	res, rei [f]
<i>think</i>	puto-are-avi
<i>thousand</i>	mille
<i>three</i>	tres, tria
<i>through</i>	per [+acc.]
<i>tie</i>	ligo-are-avi-atum
<i>time</i>	tempus-oris [n]
<i>tired</i>	fessus-a-um
<i>town</i>	oppidum-i [n]
<i>trust</i>	credo-ere [+dat.]
<i>twenty</i>	viginti
<i>two</i>	duo
<i>understand</i>	intellego-ere
<i>value</i>	aestimo-are-avi-atum
<i>verse</i>	versus-us [m]
<i>voice</i>	vox, vocis [f]

*walk* ambulo-are-avi-atum  
*wall* murus-i [m]  
*want* volo, velle  
*wanton* lascivus-a-um  
*war* bellum-i [n]  
*watch* specto-are-avi-atum  
*watch over* custodio-ire  
*water* aqua-ae [f]  
*way, route* iter-ineris [n]  
*weep* fleo-ere  
*whisper* susurro-are-avi  
*who? what?* quis? quid?  
*why* cur  
*wicked* scelestus-a-um  
*wind* ventus-i [m]  
*window* fenestra-ae [f]  
*wine* vinum-i [n]  
*wise* prudens, sapiens  
*with* cum [+abl.]  
*without* sine [+abl.]  
*woman* femina-ae [f]  
*wood* silva-ae [f]  
*word* verbum-i [n]  
*work* opus-eris [n], labor-is [m]  
*work* laboro-are-avi  
*wound* vulnero-are-avi-atum  
*wretched* miser-a-um  
*write* scribo-ere-ipsi-iptum  
*year* annus-i [m]